Guida di installazione rapida Guia de Instalação Rápida Verkorte Installatiehandleiding

Guia de Instalação Rápida



8



Read this manual carefully before you use the product and keep it handy for future reference. For safe and correct use, please be sure to read the Safety Information before using the machine. This manual briefly describes the procedure for installing this machine.

For more details about installation and other information, see Hardware Guide in the CD-ROM.

Lesen Sie das Handbuch vor der Verwendung dieses Geräts sorgfältig durch. Bewahren Sie das Handbuch sicher auf.

Vor der Verwendung des Geräts sollten Sie die Sicherheitshinweise lesen, um eine sichere und korrekte Verwendung zu gewährleisten.

Dieses Handbuch bietet eine Kurzbeschreibung des Vorgangs der Geräteinstallation.

Weitere Informationen zur Installation und zu weiteren Themen finden Sie in der Hardware-Anleitung auf der CD-ROM.

Lisez attentivement ce manuel avant d'utiliser le produit et n'hésitez pas à vous y reporter

Pour exploiter pleinement les fonctionnalités du périphérique et l'utiliser dans les meilleures conditions de sécurité possibles, lisez Consignes de sécurité avant de vous en servir.

Ce manuel décrit brièvement la procédure à suivre pour installer le périphérique.

Pour plus de détails sur l'installation et d'autres informations, reportez-vous au Manuel du matériel sur le CD-ROM.

Leggere attentamente il presente manuale prima di utilizzare il prodotto e tenerlo a portata di mano per riferimenti futuri.

Per un utilizzo corretto e sicuro, leggere le Informazioni sulla sicurezza prima di usare la

Il presente manuale descrive brevemente la procedura di installazione della periferica.

Per maggiori dettagli sull'installazione e per altre informazioni, vedere la Guida per l'hardware all'interno del CD-ROM.

Lea este manual atentamente antes de usar el producto y guárdelo en un lugar a mano para poder consultarlo en el futuro.

Para hacer un uso correcto y seguro de la máquina, lea el apartado Información de seguridad antes de utilizar la máquina.

Este manual describe las instrucciones para instalar esta máguina.

Para obtener más detalles sobre la instalación e información adicional, consulte el Manual de hardware en el CD-ROM.

Lees de handleiding zorgvuldig door voordat u het product gebruikt en houd deze bij de hand. U kunt dan de handleiding zo nodig altijd raadplegen.

Lees met het oog op een veilig en juist gebruik van het apparaat ook de Veiligheidsinformatie door voordat u het apparaat gaat gebruiken.

In deze handleiding wordt de installatieprocedure voor dit apparaat kort beschreven.

Voor meer informatie over de installatie en andere informatie, raadpleeg de Hardwarehandleiding op de cd-rom.

Leia o presente manual com atenção antes de utilizar este produto e guarde-o para futura referência.

Para uma utilização correcta e em segurança, leia as Informações de Segurança antes de utilizar o equipamento.

O presente manual descreve brevemente o procedimento para instalar este equipamento.

Para mais informações acerca das instalações e outras informações, consulte o Guia de Hardware no CD-ROM.

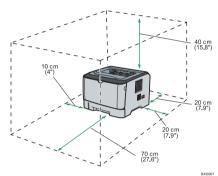
Leia o presente manual com atenção antes de utilizar este produto e guarde-o para futura referência.

Para uma utilização correta e segura, leia a Informação de segurança antes de utilizar o equipamento.

O presente manual descreve brevemente o procedimento para instalar este equipamento. Para mais informações sobre as instalações e outras informações, consulte o Guia de Hardware no CD-ROM.

# Place to Install

Installationsort **Emplacement de l'installation** Posizione di installazione Lugar de instalación Plaatsen voor de installatie Local de instalação Local de instalação







2

#### **❖ Power Source**

- 120 V, 60 Hz, 10 A or more • 220 - 240 V, 50/60 Hz, 5 A or more
- ❖ Stromversorgung
- 120 V, 60 Hz, 10 A oder mehr
  220 240 V, 50/60 Hz, 5 A oder mehr

#### Source d'alimentation

- 120 V, 60 Hz, 10 A ou plus
- 220 240 V, 50/60 Hz, 5 A ou plus

#### Alimentazione

- 120 V, 60 Hz, 10 A o maggiore
  220 240 V, 50/60 Hz, 5 A o maggiore

#### ❖ Fuente de alimentación

- 120 V, 60 Hz, 10 A o más • 220 - 240 V, 50/60 Hz, 5 A o más
- ❖ Voeding
- 120 V, 60 Hz, 10 A of meer
- 220 240 V, 50/60 Hz, 5 A of meer

#### ❖ Fonte de alimentação

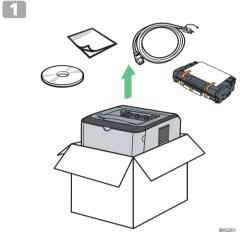
- 120 V. 60 Hz. 10 A ou mais
- 220 240 V, 50/60 Hz, 5 A ou mais

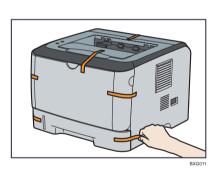
#### ❖ Fonte de alimentação

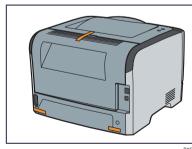
- 120 V, 60 Hz, 10 A ou mais
- 220 240 V, 50/60 Hz, 5 A ou mais

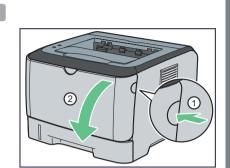
# **Unpacking**

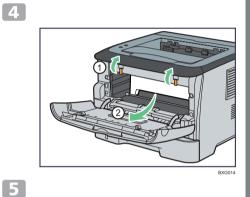
Auspacken Retrait de l'emballage Disimballaggio Desembalaje Verpakking verwijderen Desembalar Desembalar

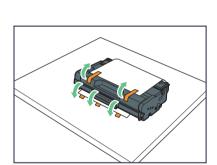


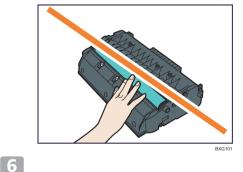


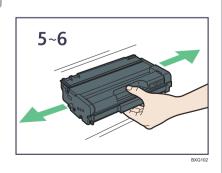


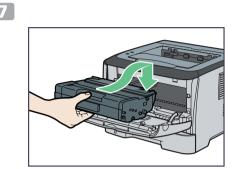


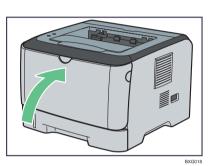


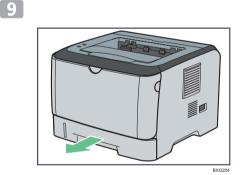


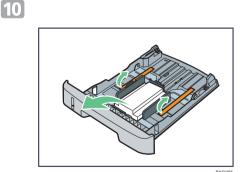








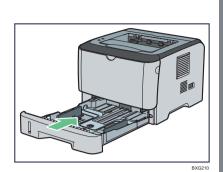


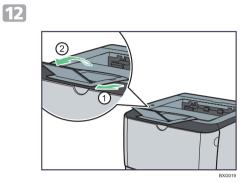






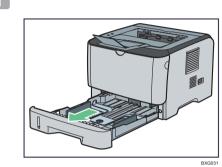


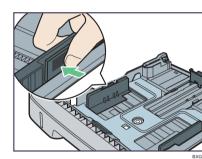




# **Loading Paper**

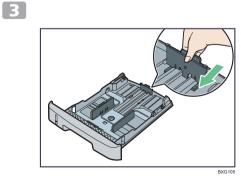
**Einlegen von Papier** Chargement du papier Caricamento della carta Carga del papel Papier plaatsen Colocar papel Colocar papel

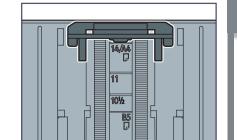


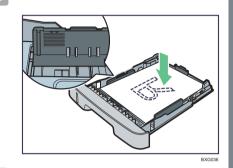


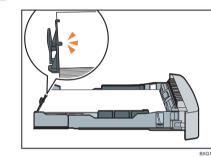
2

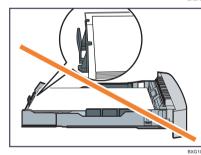


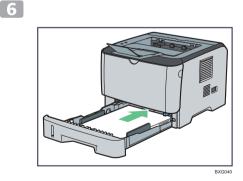






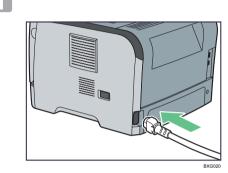






## Connection

Verbindung Connexion Collegamento Conexión Aansluiten Ligar Conectar



# **Installing the Software**

#### Installieren der Software Installation du logiciel Installazione del software Instalación del software De software installeren Instalar o software Instalar o software

- · For details about connection and installation of the printer driver when using network connection, see Software Installation Guide for Network Connection.
- For details about connection and installation of the printer driver when using local connection, see Software Guide.
- Weitere Informationen zum Anschließen und Installieren des Druckertreibers bei Verwendung einer Netzwerkverbindung finden Sie in der Software-Installationsanleitung für Netzwerkverbindungen.
- Weitere Informationen zum Anschließen und Installieren des Druckertreibers bei Verwendung eines lokalen Anschusses finden Sie in der Software-Anleitung.
- Pour plus d'informations sur la connexion et l'installation du pilote d'impression lors de l'utilisation d'une connexion réseau, reportezvous au Guide d'installation du logiciel pour une connexion réseau.
- Pour plus d'informations sur la connexion et l'installation du pilote d'impression lors de l'utilisation d'une connexion locale, reportezvous au Manuel du logiciel.
- Per ulteriori informazioni sul collegamento e sull'installazione del driver della stampante utilizzando una connessione di rete, vedere la Guida all'installazione del software con una connessione di rete.
- Per ulteriori informazioni sul collegamento e sull'installazione del driver della stampante utilizzando una connessione locale, vedere la Guida software.
- Para obtener detalles sobre la conexión e instalación del controlador de la impresora al utilizar una conexión en red, consulte la Guía de instalación de software para conexión en
- Para obtener detalles sobre la conexión e instalación del controlador de la impresora al utilizar una conexión local, consulte el Manual de software.
- · Voor meer informatie over het aansluiten en installeren van het printerstuurprogramma bij een netwerkverbinding, raadpleeg de Software-installatiehandleiding voor netwerkverbindingen.
- Voor meer informatie over het aansluiten en installeren van het printerstuurprogramma bij een lokale verbinding, raadpleeg de Softwarehandleiding.

- Para informações acerca de como ligar e instalar o controlador da impressora para ligação à rede, consulte o Guia de Instalação de Software para Ligação de Rede.
- Para informações acerca de como ligar e instalar o controlador da impressora para ligação local, consulte o *Guia de Software*.
- Para informações sobre conexão e instalação do driver da impressora para conexão de rede, consulte o Guia de Instalação de Software para Conexão de Rede
- Para informações sobre como conectar e instalar o driver da impressora para conexão local, consulte o Guia de Software.

Copyright © 2009 **Printed in China** ENGB ENUS DECE FRER IT IT ESES NL NL PT PT PT BR

Guide d'installation rapide Guía de Instalación Rápida Guia de Instalação Rápida



# SP 3400N/SP 3410DN

# Operating Instructions Hardware Guide



- 1 Guide to the Printer
- 2 Installing the Printer and Options
- 3 Connecting the Printer
- 4 Paper and Other Media
- 5 Replacing Consumables
- 6 Cleaning the Printer
- 7 Troubleshooting
- 8 Removing Misfed Paper
- 9 Appendix

#### Introduction

This manual contains detailed instructions and notes on the operation and use of this machine. For your safety and benefit, read this manual carefully before using the machine. Keep this manual in a handy place for quick reference.

#### **Important**

Contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice. In no event will the company be liable for direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages as a result of handling or operating the machine.

Do not copy or print any item for which reproduction is prohibited by law.

Copying or printing the following items is generally prohibited by local law:

bank notes, revenue stamps, bonds, stock certificates, bank drafts, checks, passports, driver's licenses.

The preceding list is meant as a guide only and is not inclusive. We assume no responsibility for its completeness or accuracy. If you have any questions concerning the legality of copying or printing certain items, consult with your legal advisor.

#### Notes:

Some illustrations in this manual might be slightly different from the machine.

Certain options might not be available in some countries. For details, please contact your local dealer. Depending on which country you are in, certain units may be optional. For details, please contact your

local dealer.

#### Caution:

Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual might result in hazardous radiation exposure.

For good print quality, the supplier recommends that you use genuine toner, maintenance kits and parts from the supplier.

The supplier shall not be responsible for any damage or expense that might result from the use of consumables (toner, maintenance kits and parts) other than genuine consumables from the supplier with your office products.

# **TABLE OF CONTENTS**

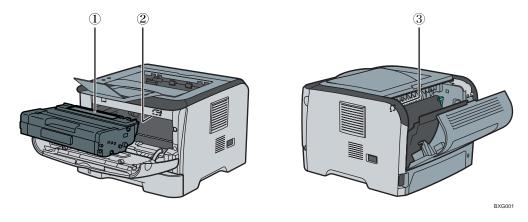
Positions of AWARNING and ACAUTION labels  Power Switch Symbols	
Manuals for This Printer	
How to Read This Manual	
Symbols	
Printer Types	4
Using Manuals	5
Installing Manuals on Your Computer	
Opening Manuals	
Removing Manuals from Your Computer	7
1. Guide to the Printer	
Exterior: Front View	9
Exterior: Rear View	10
Interior	11
Control Panel	12
2. Installing the Printer and Options	
Installing the Printer	13
Where to Put the Printer	
Unpacking	
Turning the Power On	21
Installing the Optional Paper Feed Unit	23
3. Connecting the Printer	
Network Connection	
Reading the LED Lamps	28
USB Connection	29
4. Paper and Other Media	
Supported Paper for Each Tray	31
Paper Recommendations	33
Loading Paper	
Storing Paper	
Types of Paper and Other Media	
Paper Not Supported by This Printer Print Area	
Loading Paper	
Loading Paper in Tray 1	
Loading Paper in Tray 2	
Loading Paper in the Bypass Tray	

# 5. Replacing Consumables

Replacing the Print Cartridge	
6. Cleaning the Printer	
Cautions to Take When Cleaning	65
Cleaning the Friction Pad and the Paper Feed Roller	66
7. Troubleshooting	
Error & Status Messages on Smart Organizing Monitor	69
Panel Indicator	74
Printer Does Not Print	
When the Printer is Directly Connected to a Computer via USB Cable	
Other Printing Problems	
Additional Troubleshooting	83
8. Removing Misfed Paper	
When Paper is Jammed	85
Removing Jammed Paper from the Inner/Tray 1/Tray 2	
Removing Jammed Paper from the Bypass Tray	
Removing Jammed Paper from the Exit Area/Duplex Unit	90
9. Appendix	
Moving and Transporting the Printer	95
Moving the printer in a short distance	
Moving over a Long Distance	
Disposal	
Consumables	
Print Cartridges	
Specifications  Main Unit	
Paper Feed Unit TK1080	
Electromagnetic Interference	
INDEX	103

# Positions of AWARNING and ACAUTION labels

This machine has labels for <u>AWARNING</u> and <u>ACAUTION</u> at the positions shown below. For safety, please follow the instructions and handle the machine as indicated.



1



Do not incinerate toner or toner containers.
 Tone dust may cause flashback when exposed to an open flame.
 Ne pas incinérer les cartouches ni les boites de cartouches de toner.
 Seposé à une flamme nue, la cendre de toner peut provoquer un retour de flamme.
 Verbrenen Sie keinen Toner oder Tonerfattusche. Tonerstaub kann bem kontakt mit offenen Fauer explodieren.
 Non gettare it kont or i contentiori det forer suff borcu, la opvere det floers s) un recadire dalls flamme.
 No incinere et timer in los contenedores de timer. Il pulvo de toner puede inflammes el ser expuesto al fuego.
 Nie exponha o Tomer our su su emblaspan o flogo, 00 de foren poder explorit quande exposts a character.

Do not incinerate toner or toner containers.

Toner dust may cause flashback when exposed to an open flame.

(2)



Do not touch the parts a label indicates.

The inside of the machine could be very hot.





Do not touch the parts a label indicates.

The inside of the machine could be very hot.

# **Power Switch Symbols**

The meanings of the symbols for the switches on this machine are as follows:

- I:POWER ON.
- O:POWER OFF.

# **Manuals for This Printer**

For particular functions, see the relevant parts of the manual.

#### ❖ Safety Information

Provides information on safe usage of this printer. To avoid injury and prevent damage to the printer, be sure to read this.

#### ❖ Quick Installation Guide

Contains procedures for removing the printer from its box, and connecting it to a computer.

#### Hardware Guide (This manual)

Contains information about paper and procedures such as installing options, replacing consumables, responding to error messages, and resolving jams.

#### **❖** Software Guide

Contain procedures for using this printer in a network environment, and utilizing the software.

# **How to Read This Manual**

## **Symbols**

This manual uses the following symbols:

## **∰**Important

Indicates points to pay attention to when using the machine, and explanations of likely causes of paper misfeeds, damage to originals, or loss of data. Be sure to read these explanations.

#### Note

Indicates supplementary explanations of the machine's functions, and instructions on resolving user errors.

#### 

This symbol is located at the end of sections. It indicates where you can find further relevant information.

#### []

Indicates the names of keys and buttons.

Indicates the names of keys on the printer's control panel.

# **Printer Types**

This printer comes in two models that have different duplex functions.

When describing procedures that are model-specific, this manual refers to the different printer models as Type 1 or Type 2. The following table describes the model types.

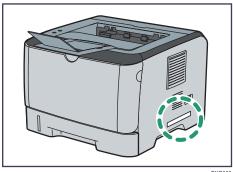
#### Model types

Model type	Model name	Duplex Printing
Type 1	SP 3400N	Manual
Type 2	SP 3410DN	Automatic

Furthermore, the 120V symbol is used for information that is relevant only to the 120 V model printer, and the **220-240V** symbol is used for information that is relevant only to the 220 to 240 V model printer.

#### Checking the voltage rating of your printer

• Check the label on the left side of your printer for the voltage rating.



# **Using Manuals**

Be sure to read this section before any other part of this manual.

 This manual uses procedures based on Windows XP as an example, unless otherwise specified. Procedures and screens might vary depending on the operating system you are using.

## **Installing Manuals on Your Computer**

The manuals for this printer are provided as HTML and/or PDF documents on the included CD-ROM. The format of the manuals will vary depending on the country where the printer was bought.

Use the following procedure to install the manuals from the CD-ROM.

t

- ☐ System requirements for viewing the HTML manual:
  - 800 × 600 pixel display resolution or greater
- ☐ Applications for viewing the HTML manual:
  - Microsoft® Internet Explorer 4.01 Service Pack 2 or higher
  - HTML manuals can also be viewed on a Macintosh
- ☐ Applications for viewing the PDF manuals:
  - Adobe Acrobat Reader or Adobe Reader
- ☐ Install the HTML manual along with Smart Organizing Monitor. When a printer error occurs, Smart Organizing Monitor may make reference to the HTML manual to notify the user of the procedure to resolve the problem.
- 1 Quit all applications currently running.
- 2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

If you are using a computer running a Macintosh operating system, open "Manuals.htm" from the CD-ROM root directory.

- **3** Select a language for the interface and a product, and then click [OK].
- 4 Click [Install manuals].
- **5** Follow the instructions on the screen to complete the installation.
- 6 Click [Finish] when the installation is completed.
- Click [Exit].

#### Note

☐ If you are using a computer running a Windows operating system, the CD-ROM opens automatically. However, AutoRun may not work under certain operating system settings. If this is the case, launch "setup.exe" from the CD-ROM root directory.

## **Opening Manuals**

This section describes how to open the manuals. There are three ways to view the manuals.

#### Opening from the desktop icon

Follow the procedure below to open the manuals from the desktop icon.

1 Double-click the manual icon on your desktop.



The manual opens.

#### Opening from the [Start] menu

Follow the procedure below to open the manual from the [Start] menu.

On the [Start] menu, point to [All Programs], point to [Product Name], and then click [Manual Name].

The manual opens.



☐ The menu options may appear differently, depending on the options chosen during installation.

#### Opening from the CD-ROM

Follow the procedure below to open the manual from the CD-ROM.

**1** Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

If you are using a computer running a Macintosh operating system, open "Manuals.htm" from the CD-ROM root directory.

- 2 Select a language for the interface and a product, and then click [OK].
- Click [Read HTML manuals] or [Read PDF manuals], and then select the manual you want to read.

220-240V

If you want to read manuals from CD-ROM, click [Read HTML manuals].

120V

If you want to read manuals from CD-ROM, click [Read HTML manuals] or [Read PDF manuals].

The manual opens.

A	N	ote
N/P	IV	ote

☐ If you are using a computer running a Windows operating system, the CD-ROM opens automatically. However, AutoRun may not work under certain operating system settings. If this is the case, launch "setup.exe" from the CD-ROM root directory.

## **Removing Manuals from Your Computer**

Follow the procedure below to remove manuals from your computer.

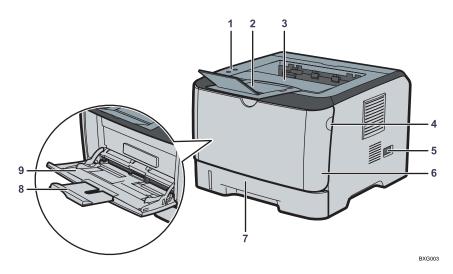
- On the [Start] menu, point to [All Programs], point to [Product Name], and then click [Uninstall].
- **2** Follow the instructions to remove the manual.
- Click [Finish].

#### Note

☐ The menu options may appear differently, depending on the options chosen during installation.

# 1. Guide to the Printer

# **Exterior: Front View**



#### 1. Control Panel

Contains keys for printer control and indicators that show the printer status.

#### 2. Stop Fences

Raise this fence to prevent paper from falling off.

#### 3. Output Tray

Printed paper is output here. Up to 125 sheets of plain paper can be stacked here.

#### 4. Front Cover Release Button

Press this to open the front cover.

#### 5. Power Switch

Use this switch to turn the power on and off.

#### 6. Front Cover

Open this cover to replace the print cartridge or remove jammed paper.

#### 7. Tray 1

This tray can hold up to 250 sheets of plain paper.

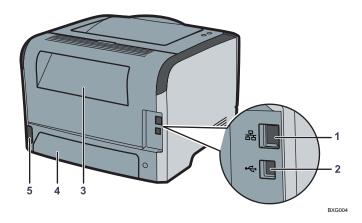
#### 8. Bypass Tray Extension

Pull this out when loading a sheet that is longer than A4 SEF on the Bypass Tray.

#### 9. Bypass Tray

This tray can hold up to 50 sheets of plain paper.

# **Exterior: Rear View**



#### 1. Ethernet Port

Use a network interface cable to connect the printer to the network.

#### 2. USB Port

Use a USB cable to connect the printer to the host computer.

#### 3. Rear Cover

Open this cover to remove jammed paper or when printing on envelopes.

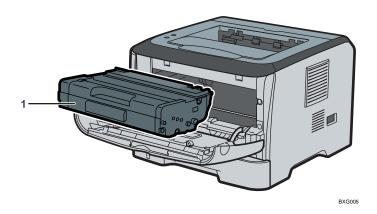
#### 4. Tray 1 Rear cover

Remove this cover when you load paper larger than A4 in the paper tray.

#### 5. Power Socket

For connecting the power cord to the printer.

# **Interior**



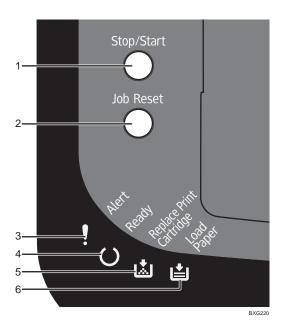
#### 1. Print Cartridge

If a toner end indicator on the control panel lights up, replace the print cartridge.

# 

For details about the messages that appear on the screen when consumables need to be replaced, see p.69 "Error & Status Messages on Smart Organizing Monitor".

# **Control Panel**



#### 1. [Stop/Start] key

If you press this key, the printer stops receiving data, and printing is not possible. Press the **[Stop/Start]** key again to return to the ready condition.

You can also use this key to print the configuration page. To print the configuration page, turn the printer off and then, while pressing and holding this key down, turn the printer back on, keeping the key pressed until the **Alert** indicator flashes once.

Printing starts approximately 30 seconds after the **Alert** indicator starts flashing.

#### 2. [Job Reset] key

Press this key to cancel a job that is printing out.

You can also use this key to print a test page. To print the test page, turn the printer off and then, while pressing and holding this key down, turn the printer back on, keeping the key pressed until the **Alert** indicator flashes once.

Printing starts approximately 30 seconds after the **Alert** indicator starts flashing.

# **3. Alert Indicator** Lights up whenever

Lights up whenever a printer error occurs. Use Smart Organizing Monitor to check the error.

#### 4. Ready Indicator

Lights up when the printer is ready to receive data from a computer. Flashes when the printer is warming up or receiving data.

#### 5. Replace Print Cartridge Indicator

Blinks when the toner amount is approaching exhaustion. Lights up when the toner is empty.

#### 6. Load Paper Indicator

Lights up when a paper tray is empty or unattached.

#### 

For printing the configuration page, see Software Guide.

# 2. Installing the Printer and Options

# **Installing the Printer**

This section describes how to install the printer and perform settings after installation.

#### Where to Put the Printer

The printer's location should be carefully chosen because environmental conditions greatly affect its performance.

#### **MARNING:**

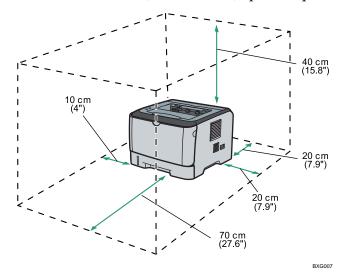
- The supplied power cord is for use with this equipment only. Do not use with other appliances. Doing so may result in fire, electric shock, or injury.
- Keep the machine away from flammable liquids, gases, and aerosols. A fire or an electric shock might occur.
- The wall outlet shall be installed near the machine and shall be easily accessible.
- Connect the machine only to the power source described in this manual. Connect the power cord directly into a wall outlet and do not use an extension cord. Do not damage, break or make any modifications to the power cord. Do not place heavy objects on it. Do not pull it hard nor bend it more than necessary. These actions could cause an electric shock or fire.
- Power cords that are damaged, broken, modified, trapped under heavy objects, pulled hard, or bent severely are electric shock and fire hazards.
- Touching the prongs of the power cable's plug with anything metallic constitutes a fire and electric shock hazard.
- Keep the polythene materials (bags, gloves, etc.) supplied with this
  machine away from babies and small children at all times. Suffocation
  can result if polythene materials are brought into contact with the
  mouth or nose.

#### **↑** CAUTION:

- Keep the machine away from humidity and dust. Otherwise a fire or an electric shock might occur. Do not place the machine on an unstable or tilted surface. If it topples over, an injury might occur.
- Keep the machine in an area that is within optimum environmental conditions. Operating the machine in an environment that is outside the recommended ranges of humidity and temperature can cause an electrical fire hazard. Keep the area around the socket free of dust. Accumulated dust can become an electrical fire hazard.
- Make sure the room where you are using the machine is well ventilated and spacious. Good ventilation is especially important when the machine is used heavily.
- Machine sound levels exceeding \( \sum\_{\text{wad}} > 65.8dB \) (A) are not suitable for desk work environments, so place the machine in another room.
- When new, electrical devices containing volatile materials will normally release emissions into the air of their vicinity. For this reason, for the first few days after installation of a new device, strong ventilation inside the room where it is placed is necessary.

#### Space Required for Installation

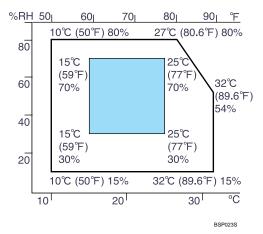
The recommended (or minimum) space requirements are as follows:



14

#### Optimum Environmental Conditions

Permissible and recommended temperature and humidity ranges are as follows:



- White area: Permissible Range
- Gray area: Recommended Range

#### **𝚱** Note

- ☐ To avoid buildup of ozone, be sure to locate this machine in a large, well ventilated room that has an air turnover of more than 30 m³/hr/person.
- ☐ When you use this machine for a long time in a confined space without good ventilation, you may detect an odd smell. To keep the workplace comfortable, we recommend that you keep it well ventilated.

#### Environments to Avoid

#### **#Important**

- ☐ Areas exposed to direct sunlight or strong light
- ☐ Dusty areas
- ☐ Areas with corrosive gases
- $\square$  Areas that are excessively cold, hot, or humid
- ☐ Areas directly exposed to currents of hot, cold, or room-temperature air from air conditioners
- ☐ Areas directly exposed to radiant heat from heaters
- ☐ Locations near air conditioners, heaters, or humidifiers
- ☐ Locations near other electronic equipment
- ☐ Locations subject to frequent strong vibration

#### Power Source

Connect the power cable to a power source of the following specification:

- **120V**: 120 V, 60 Hz, 10 A or more (when fully equipped)
- **220-240V**: 220-240 V, 50/60 Hz, 5 A or more (when fully equipped)

## **Unpacking**

To protect it from shock and vibration during transit, this printer comes packaged in cushioning foam and secured with tape. Remove these protective materials after bringing the printer to where it will be installed.

#### **⚠ WARNING:**

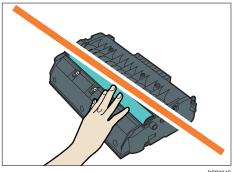
- Do not incinerate used toner or toner containers. Toner dust might ignite when exposed to an open flame. Dispose of used toner containers in accordance with local regulations.
- Do not store toner, used toner, or toner containers in a place with an open flame. The toner might ignite and cause burns of a fire.

#### riangle CAUTION:

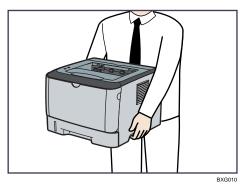
- Keep toner (used or unused) and toner containers out of reach of children.
- If toner or used toner is inhaled, gargle with plenty of water and move into a fresh air environment. Consult a doctor if necessary.
- If toner or used toner gets into your eyes, flush thoroughly with eyewash or water. Consult a doctor if necessary.
- If toner or used toner is swallowed, dilute by drinking a large amount of water. Consult a doctor if necessary.
- The printer weighs approximately 12 kg (26.4 lb.). When moving the machine, use the inset grips on both sides, and lift slowly. The machine will break or cause injury if dropped.

#### **∰**Important

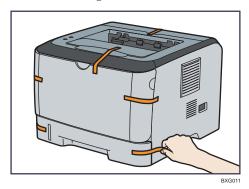
- ☐ Removed tape is dirty. Be careful not to let it touch your hands or clothes.
- ☐ Leave the tape holding the paper feed tray and cover in place while moving the printer.
- ☐ Lower the printer slowly and carefully to prevent trapping your hands.
- $\ \square$  Do not grip on the tray area when lifting the printer.
- ☐ Do not allow paper clips, staples, or other small metallic objects to fall inside the printer.
- ☐ Keep the uncovered print cartridge away from direct sunlight.
- ☐ Do not touch the print cartridge's photo conductor.

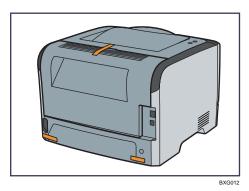


- 1 Take out the printer from the box, and then remove the plastic bag.
- 2 Lift the printer by using the inset grips on both sides of the printer.



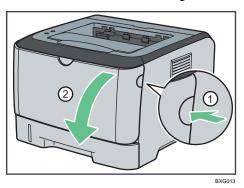
**B** Remove the protective materials attached on the printer's exterior.



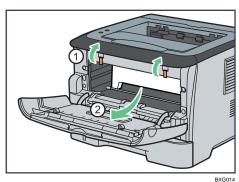


The actual printer may come with protective materials attached in different positions. Make sure to check the printer's exterior for all protective materials, and remove them completely.

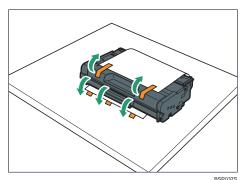
# 4 Push the side button to open the front cover, and then carefully lower it.



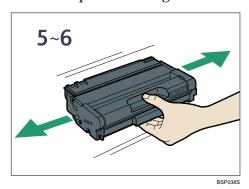
**5** Remove the protective material attached inside the printer.



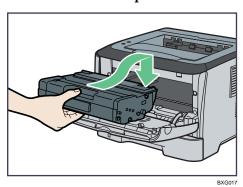
Unpack the print cartridge. Then, place it on a flat surface, and remove the protection sheet.



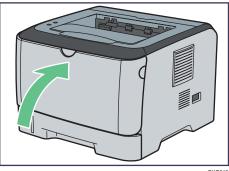
Shake the print cartridge from side to side five or six times.



2 Slide the print cartridge in horizontally. When the cartridge can go no further, raise it slightly and push it fully in. Then push down on the cartridge until it clicks into place.

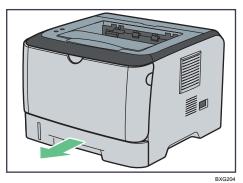


Using both hands, carefully push up the front cover until it closes.

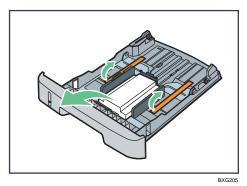


XG018

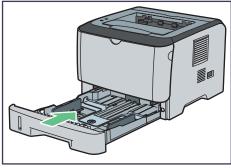
# 2 Carefully pull tray 1, and then pull out with both hands.



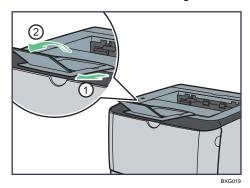
Remove the protective material attached inside the tray.



Carefully push tray 1 straight into the printer.



# Pull out and raise the stop fence.



# **Turning the Power On**

Follow the procedure below to turn the power on.

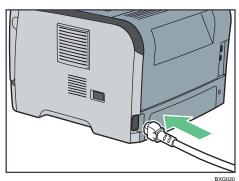
#### **MARNING:**

• Plug and unplug the power cable with dry hands, or an electric shock could occur.

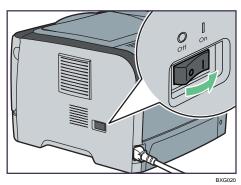
#### ∰Important

- ☐ Make sure the power cable is plugged securely into the wall outlet.
- ☐ Turn the power switch off when plugging and unplugging the power plug.
- ☐ Do not turn off the power switch until initializing is completed. Doing so results in malfunction.

# 1 Plug in the power cable.



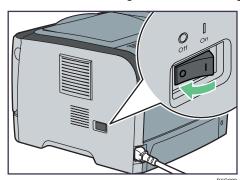
# 2 Turn the power switch to " | On".



The **Ready** indicator on the control panel lights up.

#### Note

- ☐ Wait until the **Ready** indicator turns on.
- ☐ The printer may make a noise while initializing. This noise does not indicate a malfunction.
- ☐ To turn off the power, turn the power switch to "O Off".



22

# **Installing the Optional Paper Feed Unit**

This section describes how to install the optional paper feed unit.

#### ⚠ WARNING:

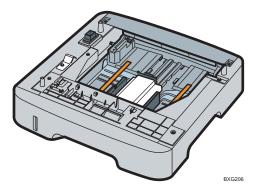
• Touching the prongs of the power cable's plug with anything metallic constitutes a fire and electric shock hazard.

#### **A** CAUTION:

- The printer weighs approximately 12 kg (26.4 lb.). When moving the printer, use the inset grips on both sides, and lift slowly in pairs. The printer will break or cause injury if dropped.
- Lifting the paper feed unit carelessly or dropping may cause injury.
- It is dangerous to handle the plug with wet hands. Doing this may result in receiving an electric shock.
- Before moving the printer, unplug the power cord from the wall outlet. If the cord is unplugged abruptly, it could become damaged. Damaged plugs or cords can cause an electrical or fire hazard.

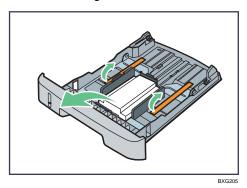
#### **#Important**

- ☐ Tray 1 is required to print using the optional paper feed unit. Without Tray 1, paper jams will occur.
- ☐ Certain options might not be available in some countries. For details, contact your local dealer.
- $\hfill\Box$  Do not grip the tray areas when moving the printer.
- 1 Check the package contains the paper feed unit.

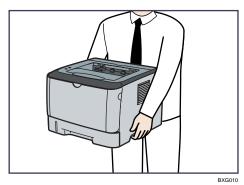


**2** Turn off the power, and then unplug the printer's power cord from the wall outlet.

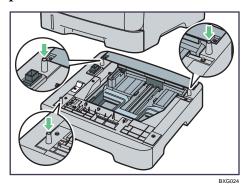
# **3** Remove the protective material attached inside the tray.



**4** Lift the printer using the inset grips on both sides.



There are three upright pins on the optional paper feed unit. Align them with the holes on the underside of the printer, and then carefully lower the printer onto them.



6 After installing the option, print the configuration page to confirm the installation.

If it is installed properly, "Tray 2" will appear under "Tray Info" on the configuration page.

#### Note

- ☐ When moving the printer, remove the optional paper feed unit.
- ☐ After installing the optional paper feed unit, select tray 2 in the printer driver. For details, see the printer driver Help.
- ☐ If the optional paper feed unit is not installed properly, reinstall it following this procedure. If you cannot install it properly even after attempting reinstallation, contact your sales or service representative.

# 

For loading paper into the paper tray, see p.41 "Loading Paper".

For printing the configuration page, see Software Guide.

When adjusting the printing position, see Software Guide.

# 3. Connecting the Printer

# **Network Connection**

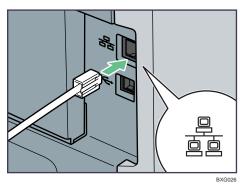
Follow the procedure below to connect the printer to a computer through a network. Prepare the hub and other network devices before connecting the 10BASE-T or 100BASE-TX cable to the printer's Ethernet port.

#### **⚠** CAUTION:

 Do not connect the Ethernet port of the printer to a network that may supply excess voltage, such as a telephone line. Doing so may result in fire or electric shock.

#### **∰**Important

- ☐ Use shielded Ethernet cable. Unshielded cables create electromagnetic interference that could cause malfunctions.
- ☐ The Ethernet cable is not supplied with this printer. Select your cable according to the network environment.
- **1** Connect the Ethernet cable to the Ethernet port.



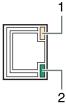
**2** Connect the cable to the network (e.g., a network hub).

## 

For details about network environment settings, see Software Guide.

For details about installing printer drivers for network connection, see Software Installation Guide for Network Connection.

# **Reading the LED Lamps**



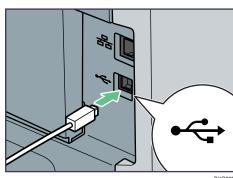
BSP048S

- 1. Yellow: Lights up when 10BASE-T connection is properly established. Flashes when data is being transmitted.
- 2. Green: Lights up when 100BASE-TX connection is properly established. Flashes when data is being transmitted.

# **USB** Connection

#### **#Important**

- ☐ USB 2.0 interface cable is not supplied. Obtain a USB cable that is correct for the computer you are using.
- □ USB connection is possible under Windows 2000/XP/Vista, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2/2008, and Mac OS X.
- ☐ USB connection with Macintosh is only possible via the printer's USB port.
- **1** Connect the square-shaped connector of the USB 2.0 cable to the USB port.



**2** Connect the opposite end's flat connector to your computer's USB interface or USB hub.

## 

For details about installing printer drivers for USB connection, see Software Guide.

## 4. Paper and Other Media

## **Supported Paper for Each Tray**

This section describes the type, size, and weight of paper that can be loaded into each tray. The capacity of each paper tray is also provided.

### Note

 $\square$  All paper must be set vertically, regardless of the paper size.

### ❖ Tray 1

Type	Size	Weight	Capacity
Plain paper	A4	52 to 162 g/m <sup>2</sup>	250
Thin paper	B5 JIS	(13.8 to 43.0 lb.)	$(80 \text{ g/m}^2, 20 \text{ lb.})$
Thick paper 1	A5		
Thick paper 2	B6-S		
Recycled paper	A6		
Color paper	Legal $(8^1/_2$ " $\times$ 14 ")		
Preprinted paper	Letter $(8^1/_2" \times 11")$		
Prepunched paper	Half Letter-S (5 $^{1}/_{2}$ " × $8^{1}/_{2}$ ")		
Letterhead	Executive $(7^{1}/_{4}" \times 10^{1}/_{2}")$		
Bond paper	8" × 13"		
Cardstock	8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 13 "		
Label paper	Folio (8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " × 13 ")		
	16K (195 × 267 mm)		
	Custom size:		
	100 to 216 mm in width,		
	148 to 356 mm in length		
	(3.94 to 8.50 inches in width,		
	5.83 to 14.02 inches in length)		

### ❖ Tray 2 (option)

Type	Size	Weight	Capacity
Plain paper	A4	$60 \text{ to } 105 \text{ g/m}^2$	250
Thin paper	B5 JIS	(16.0 to 28.0 lb.)	$(80 \text{ g/m}^2, 20 \text{ lb.})$
Thick paper 1	A5		
Recycled paper	Legal (8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 14")		
Color paper	Letter $(8^{1}/_{2}" \times 11")$		
Preprinted paper	Half Letter-S $(5^{1}/_{2}" \times 8^{1}/_{2}")$		
Prepunched paper			
Letterhead			

### ❖ Bypass tray

Type	Size	Weight	Capacity
Plain paper	A4	52 to 162 g/m <sup>2</sup>	50
Thin paper	B5 JIS	(13.8 to 43.0 lb.)	$(80 \text{ g/m}^2, 20 \text{ lb.})$
Thick paper 1	A5		
Thick paper 2	B6-S		
Recycled paper	A6		
Color paper	Legal $(8^1/_2" \times 14")$		
Preprinted paper	Letter $(8^1/_2" \times 11")$		
Prepunched paper	Half Letter-S (5 $^{1}/_{2}$ " × $8^{1}/_{2}$ ")		
Letterhead	Executive $(7^{1}/_{4}" \times 10^{1}/_{2}")$		
Bond paper	16K (195 mm × 267 mm)		
Cardstock	Com 10 $(4^1/8" \times 9^1/2")$		
Label paper	Monarch $(3^7/8" \times 7^1/2")$		
OHP transparencies	C5 Env (162 × 229 mm)		
Envelope	C6 Env (114 × 162 mm)		
	DL Env (110 × 220 mm)		
	Custom size:		
	90 to 216 mm in width,		
	140 to 356 mm in length		
	(3.54 to 8.50 inches in width,		
	5.51 to 14.02 inches in length)		

### **𝒯** Note

 $\ \square$  The number of sheets that can be printed in one minute may become lower than normal when printing on Legal size paper.

## **Paper Recommendations**

### **Loading Paper**

### **#Important**

- ☐ Do not use ink-jet printer paper because it may stick to the fusing unit and cause a paper misfeed.
- ☐ When printing on OHP transparencies that have a print side, load them with the print side over on the bypass tray. Not taking this precaution may cause them to stick to the fusing unit and cause misfeeds.
- $\square$  Set the paper as described below
  - Tray 1: Print side facing down
  - Paper Feed Unit (Tray 2): Print side facing down
  - Bypass Tray: Print side facing up
- ☐ Print quality cannot be guaranteed if paper other than the ones recommended is used. For more information about recommended paper, contact your sales or service representative.
- ☐ Do not use paper that has already been printed onto by other printers.
- ☐ Specify the paper size and type using Smart Organizing Monitor.
- ☐ The remaining paper indicator on the left front side of the paper tray shows approximately how much paper is remaining.

### **Storing Paper**

- Paper should always be stored properly. Improperly stored paper might result in poor print quality, paper misfeeds, or printer damage. Recommendations are as follows:
  - Avoid storing paper in humid areas.
  - Avoid exposing paper to direct sunlight.
  - Store on a flat surface.
- Keep paper in the package in which the paper came.

### Types of Paper and Other Media

This section provides information about the types of paper supported by this printer and cautions for use.

### Setting the paper type

Use the printer driver or Smart Organizing Monitor to specify the paper type you want to use.

### Printer driver

On the printer driver screen, click the **[Paper]** tab, and then select a paper type under **[Paper Type:]**.

### Smart Organizing Monitor

In the Smart Organizing Monitor dialog box, click the [User Tools] tab, and then click the [Printer Configuration] button.

In the dialog box that appears, click the [Paper Input] tab, and then select the paper type from the [Paper Type:] list for [Tray 1] and/or [Tray 2].

### Types of paper

### Plain paper

Item	Description
Paper thickness	65 to 99 g/m <sup>2</sup> (17.1 to 26.5 lb.)
Supported paper tray	Any input tray can be used.
Duplex supported size	A4, Legal ( $8^{1}/_{2}$ " × 14"), Letter ( $8^{1}/_{2}$ " × 11")

### Thick paper

Item	Description
Paper thickness	100 to 162 g/m² (26.6 to 43.0 lb.)
	• [Thick Paper 1]: 100 to 130 g/m² (26.6 to 34.6 lb.)
	• [Thick Paper 2]: 131 to 162 g/m² (34.7 to 43.0 lb.)
Supported paper tray	• [Thick Paper 1]: Any input tray can be used (however, tray 2 only supports thick paper weighing 100 to 105 g/m², 26.6 to 28.0 lb.).
	• [Thick Paper 2]: Tray 1 and bypass tray
Duplex supported size	<ul> <li>[Thick Paper 1] (thick paper weighing 100 to 105 g/m², 26.6 to 28.0 lb., only): A4, Legal (8¹/2"×14"), Letter (8¹/2"×11")</li> <li>[Thick Paper 2]: None</li> </ul>

Item	Description
Notes	The number of sheets that can be printed in one minute is approximately half that of plain paper.
	• The number of sheets that can be printed in one minute may become lower than normal when printing on paper of the following sizes: A4, Legal ( $8^1/_2$ " × 14"), Letter ( $8^1/_2$ " × 11"), 8" × 13", $8^1/_2$ " × 13", Folio ( $8^1/_4$ " × 13"), or 16K (195 × 267 mm).
	When using 135 g/m² (35.9 lb.) or heavier paper, prints may be output with strong curls.
	When using 135 g/m² (35.9 lb.) or heavier paper, take prints from the output tray frequently.

## ❖ Thin paper

Item	Description
Paper thickness	52 to 64 g/m <sup>2</sup> (13.8 to 17.0 lb.)
Supported paper tray	Any input tray can be used (however, tray 2 only supports thin paper weighing 60 to $64 \text{ g/m}^2$ , $16.0 \text{ to } 17.0 \text{ lb.}$ ).
Duplex supported size	A4, Legal ( $8^{1}/_{2}$ " × 14 "), Letter ( $8^{1}/_{2}$ " × 11 ")

### ❖ Recycled paper

Item	Description
Paper thickness	75 to 90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (20 to 24.0 lb.)
Supported paper tray	Any input tray can be used.
Duplex supported size	A4, Legal ( $8^{1}/_{2}$ " × 14 "), Letter ( $8^{1}/_{2}$ " × 11 ")
Notes	If the paper thickness is outside the specified range, select [Thin Paper], [Thick Paper 1] or [Thick Paper 2].

### Color paper

Item	Description
Paper thickness	75 to 90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (20 to 24.0 lb.)
Supported paper tray	Any input tray can be used.
Duplex supported size	A4, Legal ( $8^{1}/_{2}$ " × 14"), Letter ( $8^{1}/_{2}$ " × 11")
Notes	If the paper thickness is outside the specified range, select [Thin Paper], [Thick Paper 1] or [Thick Paper 2].

### ❖ Preprinted paper

Item	Description
Paper thickness	75 to 90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (20 to 24.0 lb.)
Supported paper tray	Any input tray can be used.
Duplex supported size	A4, Legal ( $8^{1}/_{2}$ " × 14 "), Letter ( $8^{1}/_{2}$ " × 11 ")
Notes	If the paper thickness is outside the specified range, select [Thin Paper], [Thick Paper 1] or [Thick Paper 2].

### ❖ Prepunched paper

Item	Description
Paper thickness	75 to 90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (20 to 24.0 lb.)
Supported paper tray	Any input tray can be used.
Duplex supported size	A4, Legal ( $8^{1}/_{2}$ " × 14"), Letter ( $8^{1}/_{2}$ " × 11")
Notes	If the paper thickness is outside the specified range, select [Thin Paper], [Thick Paper 1] or [Thick Paper 2].

### ❖ Letterhead

Item	Description
Paper thickness	75 to 90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (20 to 24.0 lb.)
Supported paper tray	Any input tray can be used.
Duplex supported size	A4, Legal ( $8^{1}/_{2}$ " × 14 "), Letter ( $8^{1}/_{2}$ " × 11 ")
Notes	Paper that has a thickness outside the specified range cannot be printed onto.

### ❖ Bond paper

Item	Description
Paper thickness	105 to 160 g/m <sup>2</sup> (28.0 to 42.6 lb.)
Supported paper tray	Tray 1 and bypass tray
Duplex supported size	None
Notes	The number of sheets that can be printed in one minute is approximately half that of plain paper.
	• When using 135 g/m <sup>2</sup> (35.9 lb.) or heavier paper, prints may be output with strong curls.
	• When using 135 g/m <sup>2</sup> (35.9 lb.) or heavier paper, take prints from the output tray frequently.
	If the paper thickness is outside the specified range, select [Plain Paper] or [Thick Paper 1].

### ❖ Cardstock

Item	Description
Paper thickness	105 to 160 g/m <sup>2</sup> (28.0 to 42.6 lb.)
Supported paper tray	Tray 1 and bypass tray
Duplex supported size	None
Notes	The number of sheets that can be printed in one minute is approximately half that of plain paper.
	• When using 135 g/m² (35.9 lb.) or heavier paper, prints may be output with strong curls.
	When using 135 g/m² (35.9 lb.) or heavier paper, take prints from the output tray frequently.
	• Paper thicker than 160 g/m <sup>2</sup> cannot be printed onto.

## ❖ Label paper

Item	Description
Supported paper tray	Tray 1 and bypass tray
Duplex supported size	None
Notes	<ul> <li>The number of sheets that can be printed in one minute is approximately half that of plain paper.</li> <li>Avoid using adhesive label paper on which glue is exposed. Glue may stick to the inner parts of the printer, which can cause paper feed problems, deterioration in print quality, or premature wear of the print cartridge's photo conductor unit.</li> </ul>

## **❖** OHP transparencies

Item	Description
Supported paper tray	Bypass tray
Duplex supported size	None
Notes	When loading OHP transparencies, take care not to load them upside down. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
	It is recommended to place one sheet at a time.
	<ul> <li>Make sure to fan OHP transparencies every time before printing. Leaving OHP transparencies loaded in the by- pass tray may cause them to stick together and result in a misfeed.</li> </ul>
	• If multiple OHP transparencies are fed at the same time, load them one by one.
	When printing on OHP transparencies, remove the transparencies one by one as they are output.

### ❖ Envelope

Item	Description
Supported paper tray	Bypass tray
Duplex supported size	None
Notes	Avoid using self-adhesive envelopes. They may cause printer malfunctions.
	<ul> <li>The number of envelopes that can be printed in one minute is approximately half that of plain paper.</li> </ul>
	• If printed envelopes come out badly creased, load the envelopes in the opposite direction. Also, configure the printer driver to rotate the print object 180 degrees. For details about changing the loading orientation, see the printer driver Help.

### Paper Not Supported by This Printer

Avoid using the following paper as they are not supported by this printer.

- Paper meant for an ink-jet printer
- Bent, folded, or creased paper
- Curled or twisted paper
- Torn paper
- Wrinkled paper
- Damp paper
- Paper that is dry enough to emit static electricity
- Paper that has already been printed onto, except a preprinted letterhead. Malfunctions are especially likely when using paper printed on by other than a laser printer (e.g. monochrome and color copiers, ink-jet printers, etc.)
- Special paper, such as thermal paper, aluminum foil, carbon paper and conductive paper
- Paper whose weight is heavier or lighter than the limitation
- Paper with windows, holes, perforations, cutouts, or embossing
- Adhesive label paper on which the adhesive underlayer or base paper is exposed
- Paper with clips or staples
- Do not use ink-jet printer paper because it may stick to the fusing unit and cause a paper jam.
- Do not use paper that has already been printed onto by other printers.

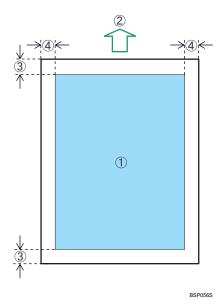
### Note

☐ Even supported types of paper may cause paper jams or malfunctions if the paper is not in good condition.

### **Print Area**

The following shows the print area for this printer. Be sure to set the print margins correctly by the application.

### ❖ Paper

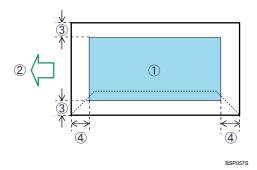


- ① Print area
- ② Feed direction
- 3 Approximately 4.2 mm (0.17 inches)
- ④ Approximately 4.2 mm (0.17 inches)

### Note

☐ The print area may vary depending on the paper size, printer language and printer driver settings.

### ❖ Envelope



- ① Print area
- ② Feed direction
- 3 Approximately 4.2 mm (0.17 inches)
- Approximately 4.2 mm (0.17 inches)

### **∅** Note

- ☐ The print area may vary depending on the paper size, printer language and printer driver settings.
- ☐ For better print quality, we recommend the right, left, top, and bottom print margins to be at least 15 mm (0.6 inches) each.

## **Loading Paper**

This section describes how to load paper into the paper tray and bypass tray.

#### **A CAUTION:**

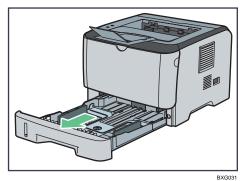
 Do not pull out the paper tray forcefully. If you do, the tray might fall and cause an injury.

### **Loading Paper in Tray 1**

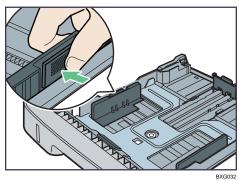
The following example explains the loading procedure for the standard paper tray (Tray 1). The same procedure can be used for the optional paper feed unit.

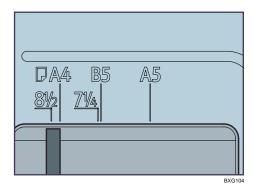
### **∰**Important

- ☐ Make sure paper is not stacked above the limit mark inside the tray. Misfeeds might occur.
- ☐ After loading paper in the tray, specify the paper type and size using Smart Organizing Monitor.
- ☐ Do not mix different types of paper in the same paper tray.
- $\square$  Do not move the side paper guides forcefully. Doing so can damage the tray.
- ☐ Do not move the end paper guide forcefully. Doing so can damage the tray.
- ☐ When inserting the tray, make sure it is not slanted. Inserting it at a slant can damage the printer.
- ☐ Fan the paper thoroughly before loading it in the paper tray.
- 1 Carefully pull tray 1, and then pull out with both hands.



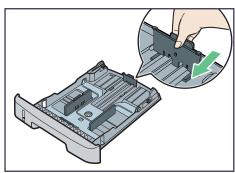
Place the tray on a flat surface.

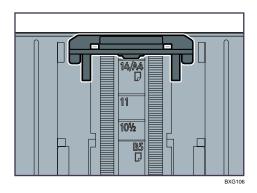




When loading custom size paper, position the paper guide slightly wider than the actual paper size.

Pinch the end paper guide and slide it inward to match the standard size.

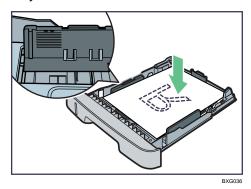




When loading custom size paper, position the paper guide slightly wider than the actual paper size.

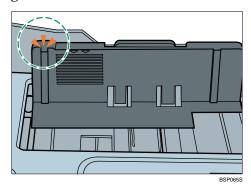
## **4** Load the new paper stack print side down.

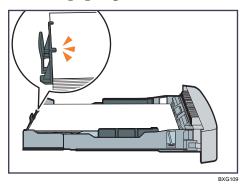
Make sure paper is not stacked higher than the upper limit marked inside the tray.



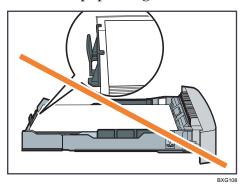
Slide the guides inward, until they are flush against the paper's sides.

Make sure the paper is not stacked higher than the projection on the side paper guides.

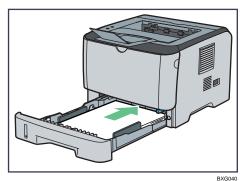




If there is a gap between the paper and the end paper guide, as in the example below, the paper might not feed in correctly.



**6** Carefully push tray 1 straight into the printer.



To avoid paper jams, make sure the tray is securely inserted.

### Note

☐ The remaining paper indicator on the left front side of the paper tray shows approximately how much paper is remaining.

### 

For details about paper types supported by the printer, see p.31 "Supported Paper for Each Tray".

For details about the paper settings, see p.34 "Types of Paper and Other Media".

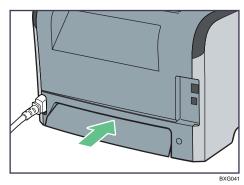
### Loading legal size paper

This section explains how to load Legal size paper into the printer.

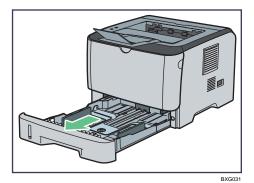
The same procedure applies to A4 paper (297 mm) or larger.

### **∰**Important

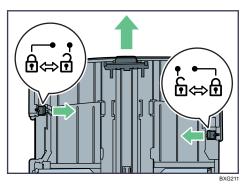
- ☐ Do not move the side paper guides forcefully. Doing so can damage the tray.
- $\square$  Do not move the end paper guide forcefully. Doing so can damage the tray.
- ☐ When inserting the tray, make sure it is not slanted. Inserting it at a slant can damage the printer.
- ☐ Fan the paper thoroughly before loading it in the paper tray.
- **1** Remove the tray 1 rear cover by pushing its center.



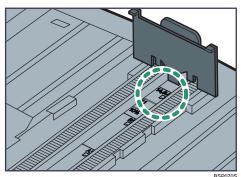
**2** Carefully pull tray 1, and then pull out with both hands.



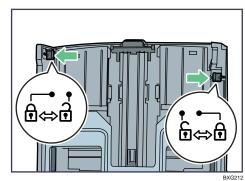
Place the tray on a flat surface.



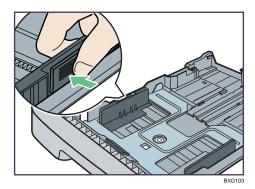
After extension, make sure the extender's inner surface and the scale are aligned.



4 Lock the extender in the extended position.

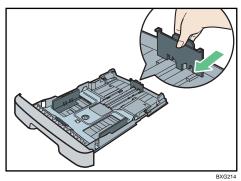


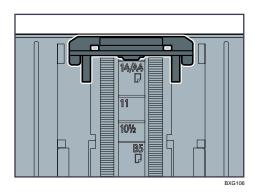
## Pinch the clip on the side paper guide, and then slide it to match the standard size.





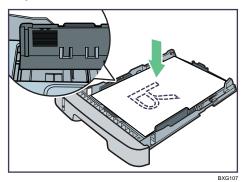
Pinch the end paper guide and slide it inward to match the Legal paper size.



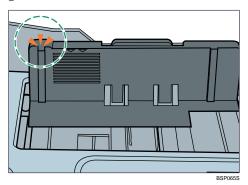


## **1** Load the new paper stack print side down.

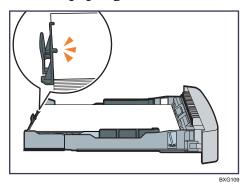
Make sure paper is not stacked higher than the upper limit marked inside the tray.



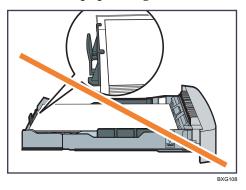
Slide the guides inward, until they are flush against the paper's sides. Make sure the paper is not stacked higher than the projection on the side paper guides.



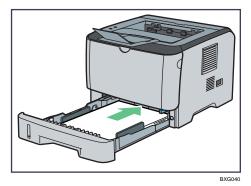
Check there are no gaps between the paper and the paper guides; both side and end paper guides.



If there is a gap between the paper and the end paper guide, as in the example below, the paper might not feed in correctly.



## 2 Carefully push tray 1 straight into the printer.



To avoid paper jams, make sure the tray is securely inserted.

### **𝚱** Note

☐ The remaining paper indicator on the left front side of the paper tray shows approximately how much paper is remaining.

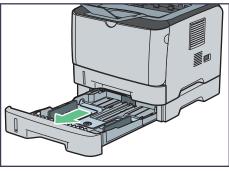
### 

For details about paper types supported by the printer, see p.31 "Supported Paper for Each Tray".

For details about the paper settings, see p.34 "Types of Paper and Other Media".

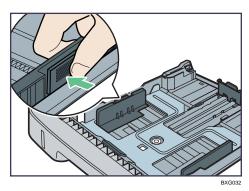
The following example explains the loading procedure for tray 2.

1 Pull tray 2, and then pull it out with both hands.

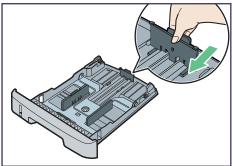


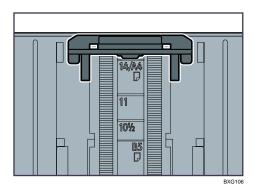
Place the tray on a flat surface.

2 Pinch the clips on the side paper guide, and then slide it to match the paper size.



Pinch the clip on the end paper guide and slide it inward to match the paper size.

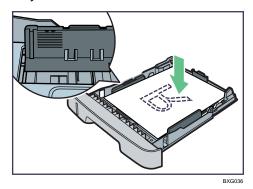




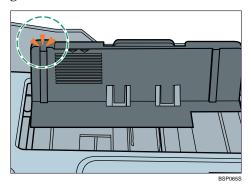
When loading custom size paper, position the paper guide slightly wider than the actual paper size.

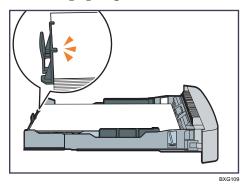
## 4 Load the new paper stack print side down.

Make sure paper is not stacked higher than the upper limit marked inside the tray.

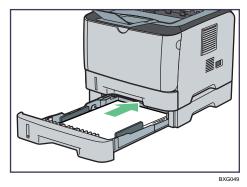


Make sure the paper is not stacked higher than the projection on the side paper guides.





**6** Carefully push tray 2 straight into the printer.



Note

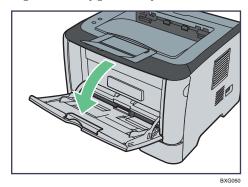
☐ The remaining paper indicator on the left front side of the paper tray shows approximately how much paper is remaining.

### **Loading Paper in the Bypass Tray**

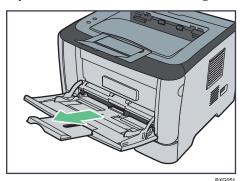
### **∰**Important

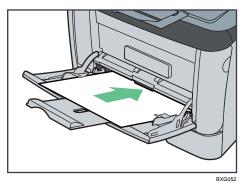
- ☐ Set the size and direction of the loaded paper using Smart Organizing Monitor or the printer driver. Make sure the settings do not conflict. Otherwise, the paper may jam or the print quality may be affected.
- ☐ Load paper with the print side up, and in the short-edge feed direction.
- ☐ If paper is curled, straighten it before loading, by bending it the paper in the opposite direction to the curl, for example.
- ☐ Do not load paper while the printer is printing.
- ☐ You cannot load paper when the printer is in Energy Saver mode. To disable Energy Saver mode, click the [Stop/Start] key on the control panel.

## 1 Open the bypass tray.

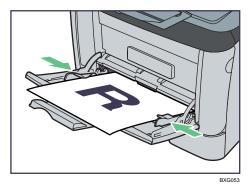


If you load A4 (297 mm) or larger size paper, pull out the bypass tray extension.





**3** Adjust the side guides to the paper width.



### Note

☐ After loading paper in the tray, specify the paper type and size using Smart Organizing Monitor or the printer driver.

### 

For details about supported types of paper, see p.31 "Supported Paper for Each Tray".

For details about specifying the paper type and size, see Software Guide.

### Loading envelopes

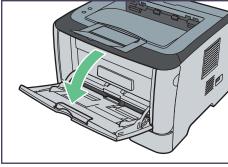
#### **A** CAUTION:

• The inside of this machine becomes very hot. Do not touch parts labelled "\( \triangle \)" (indicating a hot surface).

### **∰**Important

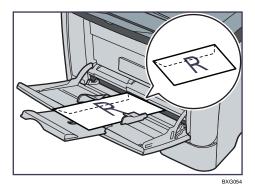
- ☐ Before printing on envelopes, make sure to lower the levers on the printer rear, inside the rear cover, to avoid envelopes coming out creased. Also, raise the levers back to their original positions after printing. Leaving the levers lowered can cause print quality problems when printing on paper other than envelopes.
- ☐ Avoid using self-adhesive envelopes. They may cause printer malfunctions.
- ☐ Check there is no air in the envelopes before loading.
- ☐ You can print on envelopes with flaps folded or unfolded. When using envelopes with flaps folded, check that the flaps are folded properly.
- ☐ Load only one size and type of envelope at a time.
- ☐ Before loading envelopes, flatten their leading edges (the edge going into the printer) by running a pencil or ruler across them.
- ☐ Some kinds of envelope might cause misfeeds, wrinkles or print poorly.
- ☐ Print quality on envelopes may be uneven if parts of an envelope have different thicknesses. Print one or two envelopes to check print quality.
- ☐ In a hot and humid environment, the envelope might be output creased or improper printing quality.

## 1 Open the bypass tray.

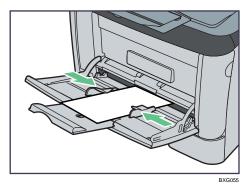


3XG050

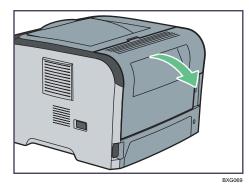
You can print on envelopes with flaps folded or unfolded. When using envelopes with flaps folded, check that the flaps are folded properly and there is no air inside.



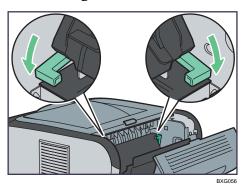
**3** Adjust the side guides to the envelope width.



4 Open the rear cover.

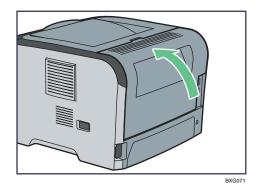


## **5** Lower the green levers on both sides.



Make sure to raise the levers back to their original positions after printing.

## **6** Close the rear cover.



### Note

- ☐ After loading envelopes in the tray, specify the paper type and size using Smart Organizing Monitor or the printer driver.
- ☐ Be sure to load envelopes so that their flaps are on the left. If you do not, the envelopes will become creased.
- ☐ If printed envelopes come out badly creased, load the envelopes in the opposite direction, and then rotate the print object by 180 degrees using the printer driver before printing. For details, see the printer driver Help.

### 

For details about supported types of paper, see p.31 "Supported Paper for Each Tray".

For details about specifying the paper type and size, see Software Guide.

## 5. Replacing Consumables

## Replacing the Print Cartridge

#### **↑** WARNING:

- Do not incinerate used toner or toner containers. Toner dust might ignite when exposed to an open flame. Dispose used toner containers in accordance with local regulations.
- Do not store toner, used toner, or toner containers in a place with an open flame. The toner might ignite and cause burns of a fire.
- Keep the polythene materials (bags, gloves, etc.) supplied with this
  machine away from babies and small children at all times. Suffocation
  can result if polythene materials are brought into contact with the
  mouth or nose.

### **A CAUTION:**

- · Keep toner (used or unused) and toner containers out of reach of children.
- If toner or used toner is inhaled, gargle with plenty of water and move into a fresh air environment. Consult a doctor if necessary.
- Avoid getting toner on your clothes or skin when removing a paper jam or replacing toner. If your skin comes into contact with toner, wash the affected area thoroughly with soap and water.
- If toner gets on your clothing, wash with cold water. Hot water will set the toner into the fabric and may make removing the stain impossible.
- If toner or used toner gets into your eyes, flush thoroughly with eyewash or water. Consult a doctor if necessary.
- If toner or used toner is swallowed, dilute by drinking a large amount of water. Consult a doctor if necessary.
- The inside of this machine becomes very hot. Do not touch parts labelled "\( \triangle \)" (indicating a hot surface).

## **‡Important**☐ Store print cartridges in a cool dark place

_	Store print cartriages in a coordark place.
	Actual printable numbers vary depending on image volume and density,
	number of pages printed at a time, paper type and size, and environmental
	conditions such as temperature and humidity. Toner quality degrades over
	time. Early replacement of the print cartridge might be necessary. Therefore, we recommend you always keep a new print cartridge ready.
	For good print quality, the supplier recommends that you use genuine toner from the supplier.

☐ The supplier shall not be responsible for any damage or expense that might result from the use of parts other than genuine parts from the supplier with your office products.

### When to replace the print cartridge

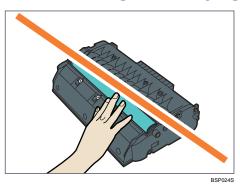
If the **Alert** indicator or **Replace Print Cartridge** indicator on the control panel light up, or the following message appears on the Smart Organizing Monitor dialog box, replace the print cartridge.

"No Toner."

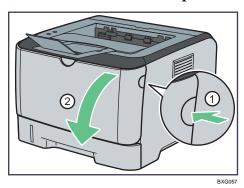
"No Toner or Waste Toner full."

### **#Important**

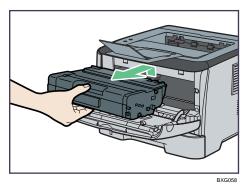
- ☐ Do not allow paper clips, staples, or other small metallic objects to fall inside the printer.
- ☐ Do not expose the print cartridge without its cover to direct sunlight for a long time.
- ☐ Do not touch the print cartridge's photo conductor unit.



- ☐ If toner runs out, you cannot print until the print cartridge is replaced.
- 1 If paper is loaded in the bypass tray, remove the paper and close the bypass tray.
- **2** Push the side button to open the front cover, and then carefully lower it.

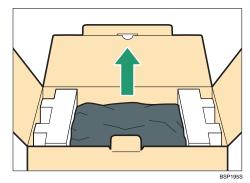


## **3** Carefully pull out the print cartridge horizontally, holding its center.

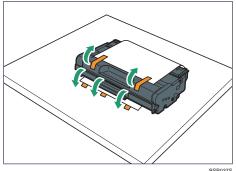


- Do not shake the removed print cartridge. Doing so can cause remaining toner to leak.
- Place the old print cartridge on paper or similar material to avoid dirtying your workspace.

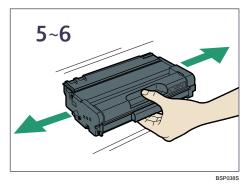
## Take the new print cartridge out of the box, and then take it out of the plastic bag.



Place the print cartridge on a flat surface, and then remove the protection sheet.

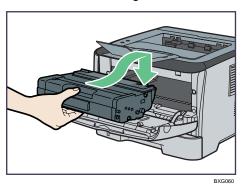


101 037 0

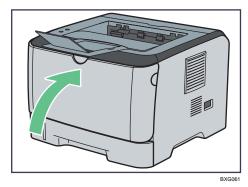


Even distribution of toner within the bottle improves print quality.

Is Slide the print cartridge in horizontally. When the cartridge can go no further, raise it slightly and push it fully in. Then push down on the cartridge until it clicks into place.



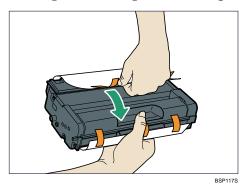
Carefully push up the front cover until it closes. Be careful not to trap your fingers.



Wait while the toner loads.

To avoid malfunction, do not turn off the power while the **Ready** indicator on the control panel is blinking.

Put the protective sheet you removed in step 5 on the old print cartridge. Then, put the old print cartridge into the bag, and then put it into the box.



### Note

- ☐ Make sure to cover the old print cartridge with the protective cover for recycling and environmental purposes.
- ☐ Comply with the print cartridge Recycling Program, whereby used print cartridges are collected for processing. For details, ask your sales or service representative.

## 6. Cleaning the Printer

## **Cautions to Take When Cleaning**

#### **MARNING:**

 Do not attempt any maintenance or troubleshooting other than that mentioned in this manual. This machine contains a laser beam generator and direct exposure to laser beams can cause permanent eye damage.

### **A CAUTION:**

- The inside of this printer becomes very hot. Do not touch parts labelled "\(\triangle \)" (indicating a hot surface).
- Be sure to disconnect the plug from the wall outlet and clean the prongs and the area around the prongs at least once a year. Allowing dust to build up on the plug constitutes a fire hazard.

Clean the printer periodically to maintain fine printing.

Dry wipe the exterior with a soft cloth. If dry wiping is not enough, wipe with a soft, wet cloth that is wrung out well. If you still cannot remove the stain or grime, use a neutral detergent, and then wipe over with a well-wrung wet cloth, dry wipe, and let it dry.

### **∰**Important

To avoid deformation, discoloration, or cracking, do not use volatile chemicals, such as benzine and thinner, or spray insecticide on the printer.
If there is dust or grime inside the printer, wipe with a clean, dry cloth.
You must disconnect the plug from the wall outlet at least once a year. Clean away any dust and grime from the plug and outlet before reconnecting. Accumulated dust and grime pose a fire hazard.
Do not allow paper clips, staples, or other small metallic objects to fall inside the printer.

# Cleaning the Friction Pad and the Paper Feed Roller

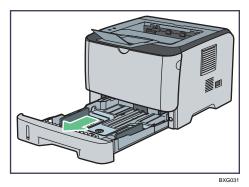
If the friction pad or paper feed roller is dirty, a multi-feed or misfeed might occur. In this case, clean the friction pad and paper feed roller as follows:

#### riangle CAUTION:

Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before you move the machine.
 While moving the machine, you should take care that the power cord will not be damaged under the machine.

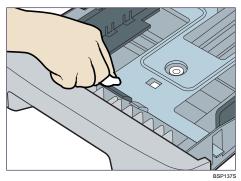
### **∰**Important

- ☐ Do not use chemical cleaner or organic solvent such as thinner or benzine.
- **1** Turn off the power.
- 2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet. Remove all the cables from the printer.
- **3** Carefully pull Tray 1, and then pull out with both hands.

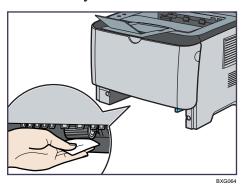


Place the tray on a flat surface. If there is paper in the tray, remove it.

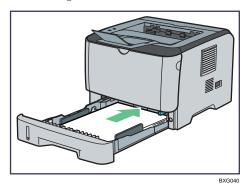
4 Wipe the friction pads with a damp cloth.



Wipe the rubber part of the roller with a soft damp cloth. After that, wipe it with a dry cloth to remove the moisture.



6 Reload the removed paper into the tray, and then push the tray carefully into the printer until it clicks into place.



- Insert the plug of the power cord into the wall socket securely. Connect all the interface cables that were removed.
- 8 Turn on the power.

# Note

- ☐ If jams or multi-sheet feeds occur after cleaning the friction pad, contact your sales or service representative.
- ☐ If the optional tray 2 is installed, clean its friction pads and paper feed roller in the same way as you did for tray 1.

# 7. Troubleshooting

# Error & Status Messages on Smart Organizing Monitor

This section explains what the messages that appear on the Smart Organizing Monitor dialog box mean and what to do when a particular message appears.

Message	Explanation	Recommended Action
An error has occurred with the network device.	The printer detected the network device error.	Turn off the power, and then turn it on again.  If the error occurs again, contact your sales or service representative.
An error has occurred with the USB device.	The printer detected the USB device error.	Turn off the power, and then turn it on again.  If the error occurs again, contact your sales or service representative.
Cover Open	The front cover or rear cover	Open and then close the front
Close the indicated cover.	is open.	cover or rear cover.
[Front or Rear Cover]		
[Feed Roller] has reached to replacing period.	The feed roller is no longer usable, and must be replaced.	Contact your sales or service representative.
Functional problem within the printer.  Turn power switch off, then on.  If the error appears again, please call service.  SCXXX	A fatal hardware error has occurred, and the printer cannot function.	Turn off the power, and then turn it on again.  If the error occurs again, contact your sales or service representative.
[Fusing Unit] has reached to replacing period.	The fusing unit is no longer usable, and must be replaced.	Contact your sales or service representative.
Independent-supplier toner has been set.	A non-supported print cartridge is installed.	Remove and replace it with a print cartridge specified by an authorized dealer.
No Paper Load paper in the indicated paper source tray. [Bypass Tray]	The indicated tray is out of paper.	Load paper into the indicated paper tray.

Message	Explanation	Recommended Action
No Response from I/O Device Check the cable, power cord, and main switch.	No information has been received from the printer.	Check the main power switch is turned on and the power cord is securely connected. Check the USB or network cables are securely connected also.
No Toner Toner has almost run out. Shortly printing becomes not available. Please keep Print Cartridge handy. No Toner or Waste Toner full No printing is available.	The printer is out of toner.  The printer is out of toner.	Replace the print cartridge. See p.59 "Replacing the Print Cartridge".  Replace the print cartridge. See p.59 "Replacing the Print
Open the indicated cover, and then replace Print Cartridge.  [Front Cover]		Cartridge".
Paper Misfeed Open the indicated cover, and pull out Print Cartridge. Then remove any misfed paper. [Front Cover] If no paper, pull out Tray 1, then remove any misfed paper.	There is a misfeed in the printer. (Inner jam) (Tray 1 jam)	Remove the misfed paper. See p.85 "Removing Jammed Paper from the Inner/Tray 1/Tray 2".
Paper Misfeed Open the indicated cover, and then remove any misfed paper. [Rear Cover] If no paper, open Front Cover and pull out Print Cartridge, then remove any misfed paper.	There is a misfeed in the printer (Outer jam).	Remove the misfed paper. See p.90 "Removing Jammed Paper from the Exit Area/Du- plex Unit".
Paper Misfeed Pull out the loaded paper from the indicated unit, and then re- move any misfed paper. [Bypass Tray] If no paper, open Front Cover and pull out Print Cartridge, then remove any misfed paper.	There is a misfeed in the printer. (Bypass tray jam)	Remove the misfed paper. See p.88 "Removing Jammed Paper from the Bypass Tray".
Paper Misfeed Pull out the indicated unit, and push Duplex Path Re- lease Lever away. Then re- move any misfed paper. [Tray 1]	There is a misfeed in the printer. (Duplex jam)	Remove the misfed paper. See p.90 "Removing Jammed Paper from the Exit Area/Duplex Unit".

Message	Explanation	Recommended Action
Paper Misfeed Pull out the indicated unit, and then remove any misfed paper. [Tray 2] If no paper, open Front Cover and pull out Print Cartridge, then remove any misfed paper. Paper Size Mismatch	There is a misfeed in the printer. (Tray 2 jam)  The paper size setting in the	Remove the misfed paper. See p.85 "Removing Jammed Paper from the Inner/Tray 1/Tray 2".  Load paper of the selected size
Paper of the selected paper size is not loaded in the indicated paper source tray. Check the indicated tray. [Bypass Tray]	tray differs from that of actual paper size in the tray.	in the tray, and then change the paper size setting with printer driver.
Paper Size Mismatch Paper of the selected paper size is not loaded in the indi- cated paper source tray.	The paper size setting in the tray differs from that of actual paper size in the tray.	Load paper of the selected size in the tray, and then change the paper size setting with Smart Organizing Monitor.
Check the indicated tray. [Tray 1] or [Tray 2]		Perform one of the following procedures if there is a print job queued for processing:  Cancel the print job by pressing the [Job Reset] key.  Apply form feed by pressing the [Stop/Start] key.  Change the paper settings in Web Image Monitor and continue printing.  For details, see "Form Feed",
Paper Size Mismatch	2-sided printing could not be	Software Guide.  Specify the tray containing the
Paper of the selected paper size is not supported for the [Duplex] feature.	performed because the tray does not contain the valid size paper, which are A4, Letter or Legal.	A4, Letter or Legal size paper in the printer driver setting. See Software Guide.
Paper Type Mismatch Paper of the selected type is not loaded in the indicated paper source tray. Check the indicated tray. [Bypass Tray]	The paper type setting in the tray differs from that of actual paper type in the tray.	Load paper of the selected type in the tray, and then change the paper type setting with printer driver.

Message	Explanation	Recommended Action
Paper Type Mismatch Paper of the selected type is not loaded in the indicated paper source tray.	The paper type setting in the tray differs from that of actual paper type in the tray.	Load paper of the selected type in the tray, and then change the paper type setting with Smart Organizing Monitor.
Check the indicated tray. [Tray 1] or [Tray 2]		Perform one of the following procedures if there is a print job queued for processing:
		Cancel the print job by pressing the [Job Reset] key.
		Apply form feed by pressing the [Stop/Start] key.
		Change the paper settings in Web Image Monitor and continue printing.
		For details, see "Form Feed", Software Guide.
Paper Type Mismatch	You cannot select duplex printing if the paper type is set	Select a paper type that allows duplex printing.
Paper of the selected paper type is not supported for the [Duplex] feature.	to [Thick Paper 2], [Bond paper], [Cardstock], [Labels], [OHP], or [Envelope].	See p.34 "Types of paper".
Print Cartridge is near empty.	The print cartridge is almost empty.	Prepare a new print cartridge.
Printing has been interrupted because of the memory overflow.	The data is too large or complex to print. Especially when performing printing on Legal size paper under certain print quality setting, print data becomes large and the job may be canceled.	If using the PCL 6 printer driver, set [Resolution] in [Print Quality] to [600 x 600 dpi]. If using the PostScript 3 printer driver, set [Print Quality] in [Printer Features] to [600 x 600 dpi].
[Transfer Roller] has reached to replacing period.	The transfer roller is no longer usable, and must be replaced.	Contact your sales or service representative.
Tray Not Detected The selected paper source tray is not set, or is not set properly. Check the indicated tray. [Tray 1] or [Tray 2]	The indicated paper input tray is not installed correctly, or not installed.	Install the indicated paper input tray correctly.
Tray Not Detected or No Paper The indicated paper source tray is not set properly, or no paper loaded. Check the indicated tray. [Tray 1] or [Tray 2]	<ul> <li>The indicated paper input tray is not installed correctly, or not installed.</li> <li>The indicated tray is out of paper.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Install the indicated paper input tray correctly.</li> <li>Load paper into the indicated paper tray.</li> </ul>

Message	Explanation	Recommended Action
Unit Not Detected	The print cartridge is not set	Set the print cartridge correctly.
Open the indicated cover, and then check Print Cartridge.	correctly, or not set.	See p.59 "Replacing the Print Cartridge".
[Front Cover]		

# **Panel Indicator**

The following table explains the meaning of the various Indicator patterns that the printer alerts to users about its conditions.

Indicator patterns	Cause
All indicators are lit.	There are problems with the printer. Check the printer status on the Smart Organizing Monitor dialog box.
	After checking the printer's status, turn off the main power, and then turn it back on again.
	If all the indicators are still lit, contact your service representative.
The <b>Alert</b> indicator is flashing.	Printer's settings are being returned to their factory-set defaults.
The <b>Alert</b> indicator is lit.	The printer cannot be used normally. Confirm the error using Smart Organizing Monitor.
The <b>Ready</b> indicator is flashing.	The printer is receiving print data or preparing to print.
The <b>Ready</b> indicator is lit.	The printer is ready for use.
The <b>Load Paper</b> indicator	There is no paper in the tray. Load paper in the tray.
is lit.	See p.41 "Loading Paper".
The <b>Replace Print Cartridge</b> indicator is flashing.	The print cartridge is almost empty.
The Replace Print Car-	The print cartridge is empty. Replace the print cartridge.
<b>tridge</b> indicator is lit.	See p.59 "Replacing the Print Cartridge".

# **Printer Does Not Print**

Possible Cause	Solutions
Is the power on?	Confirm that the cable is securely plugged into the power outlet and the printer.
	Turn the power on.
Does the <b>Alert</b> indicator stay red?	If so, check the error message on the Smart Organizing Monitor dialog box and take the required action.
Is paper loaded?	Load paper into the paper tray or the bypass tray.
	See p.41 "Loading Paper".
Can you print a configuration page?	If you cannot print a configuration page, it probably indicates a printer malfunction. Contact your sales or service representative. See Software Guide.
Is the interface cable connected securely to the printer and the computer?	Connect the interface cable securely. If it has a fastener, fasten it securely as well.
Are you using the correct interface cable?	The type of interface cable you should use depends on the computer you use. Be sure to use the correct one.
	If the cable is damaged or worn, replace it with a new one.
	See p.99 "Specifications".
Is the <b>Ready</b> indicator	If not blinking or lit, the data is not being sent to the printer.
blinking or lit after starting the print job?	❖ If the printer is connected to the computer using the interface cable  Check the port connection setting is correct. For details about checking the port connection, see p.76 "When the Printer is Directly Connected to a Computer via USB Cable".
	Network Connection Contact your network administrator.

If printing still does not start, contact your sales or service representative. Consult with the store where the printer was purchased for information about the location of sales or service representatives.

# When the Printer is Directly Connected to a Computer via USB Cable

#### Windows

When the printer is directly connected via a USB cable to a computer but the **Ready** indicator does not flash or light up, use the following method to check the port connection:

- For a USB port connection, port USB00 (n) \*1 should be set.
- (n) is the number of printers connected.

#### Windows 2000

- 1 On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].
- 2 Click to select the icon of the printer. Next, on the [File] menu, click [Properties].
- Click the [Ports] tab.
- Check the [Print to the following port] box to confirm that the correct port is selected.

If the port (such as LPT1) is not correct, reinstall the driver.

## 

For details about installation and port settings, see Software Guide.

# Windows XP Professional, and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2

- 1 On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].
- 2 Click to select the icon of the printer. Next, on the [File] menu, click [Properties].
- Click the [Ports] tab.
- Check the [Print to the following port(s).] box to confirm that the correct port is selected.

If the port such as LPT1 is not correct, reinstall the driver.

# 

For details about installation and port setting, see Software Guide.

#### Windows XP Home Edition

- 1 On the [Start] menu, click [Control Panel].
- 2 Click [Printers and Other Hardware].
- Click [Printers and Faxes].
- Click to select the icon of the printer. Next, on the [File] menu, click [Properties].
- Click the [Ports] tab.
- Check the [Print to the following port(s).] box to confirm that the correct port is selected.

If the port such as LPT1 is not correct, reinstall the driver.

## 

For details about installation and port setting, see Software Guide.

### Windows Vista, and Windows Server 2008

- On the [Start] menu, click [Control Panel], and then click [Printer] in the "Hardware and Sound".
- 2 Click to select the icon of the printer. Next, on the [File] menu, click [Properties].
- Click the [Ports] tab.
- Check the [Print to the following port(s).] box to confirm that the correct port is selected.

If the port such as LPT1 is not correct, reinstall the driver.

# 

For details about installation and port setting, see Software Guide.

#### Mac OS X

When the printer is connected to Mac OS X and the **Ready** indicator does not flash or light up, try the following procedures to check the port connection.

- Use [About This Mac] to check the USB information.
- Use the printer browser to check if the printer is displayed.

### Using [About This Mac]

- 1 Click Apple Menu, and then select [About This Mac].
- 2 Click [More Info].
- Under [Contents], for [Hardware], select [USB].

Using the printer browser

- In the menu bar, click [Go], select [Application], and then select [Utilities].
- 2 Double click [Printer Setup Utility].
- Click [Add].

The printer browser starts.

Confirm the printer is displayed on the browser. If it is not, reinstall the driver.

# **Other Printing Problems**

Status	Possible Causes, Descriptions, and Solutions
Toner smears appear on the print side of the page.	The paper setting may not be correct. For example, although you are using thick paper, the setting for thick paper may not be set.
	Check the printer driver's paper settings. See the printer driver Help.
	Confirm that the paper is not curled or bent. Envelopes can be curled easily. Flatten paper before loading.
	See p.31 "Paper and Other Media".
Paper jams occur frequently.	• Number of paper set in the tray exceeds the limit. Confirm that the top of the stack is not higher than the limit mark inside the tray.  See p.41 "Loading Paper".
	• There may be a gap between the front end paper guide and the paper, or between the paper guide both side and the paper in the paper tray. Make sure there are no gaps. See p.41 "Loading Paper".
	<ul> <li>Paper is either too thick or too thin.</li> <li>See p.31 "Paper and Other Media".</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Paper is bent or wrinkled. Use paper that has no bents or wrinkles.</li> <li>See p.31 "Paper and Other Media".</li> </ul>
	Paper has already been printed on. See p.31 "Paper and Other Media".
	• Paper is damp. Use paper that has been stored properly. See p.31 "Paper and Other Media".
	<ul> <li>The friction pad, or paper feed roller might be dirty.         Clean the relevant component.         See p.66 "Cleaning the Friction Pad and the Paper Feed Roller".     </li> </ul>
Prints fall behind the printer when they are output.	Raise the appropriate stop fence (forward fence for A4, rear fence for legal size prints).
	See p.9 "Exterior: Front View".
Prints do not stack properly.	• Paper is damp. Use paper that has been stored properly. See p.31 "Paper and Other Media".
	Pull out the extender.
	• Raise the appropriate stop fence (forward fence for A4, rear fence for legal size prints). See p.9 "Exterior: Front View".

Status	Possible Causes, Descriptions, and Solutions
Multiple pages are fed at once.	There may be a gap between the front end paper guide and the paper, or between the paper guide both side and the paper in the paper tray. Make sure there are no gaps. See p.41 "Loading Paper".
	• Paper is either too thick or too thin. See p.31 "Paper and Other Media".
	• Paper has already been printed on. See p.31 "Paper and Other Media".
	• Number of paper set in the tray exceeds the limit. Confirm that the top of the stack is not higher than the limit mark inside the tray.  See p.31 "Paper and Other Media".
	• Paper is static. Use paper that has been stored properly. See p.31 "Paper and Other Media".
	The friction pad or paper feed roller might be dirty. Clean the relevant component.     See p.66 "Cleaning the Friction Pad and the Paper Feed Roller".
	Check that paper was not added while there was still some left in the tray.  Only add paper when there is none left in the tray.
	Fan the paper before loading.
Paper gets wrinkles.	• Paper is damp. Use paper that has been stored properly. See p.31 "Paper and Other Media".
	• Paper is too thin. See p.31 "Paper and Other Media".
	• There may be a gap between the front end paper guide and the paper, or between the paper guide both side and the paper in the paper tray. Make sure there are no gaps. See p.41 "Loading Paper".
The printed paper is curled.	Load the paper upside down in the paper tray.
	Pull out the extender of the output tray.
	• If the paper curl is severe, take prints from the output tray more frequently.
	• Paper is damp. Use paper that has been stored properly. See p.31 "Paper and Other Media".
Images are not printed in the right position	Adjust the printing position from Smart Organizing Monitor.
ASH102S	See Software Guide.

Status	Possible Causes, Descriptions, and Solutions
Images are printed diagonally to the pages  ASH103S	Adjust the front end paper guide and both side paper guides to match the paper size.  See p.41 "Loading Paper".
Horizontal lines appear on the printed paper.	<ul> <li>Impact can cause lines to appear on printed paper and other malfunctions. Protect the printer from impact at all times, especially while it is printing.</li> <li>If lines appear on prints, turn the printer off, wait a few moments, and then turn it back on again. Then, perform the print job again.</li> </ul>
Paper is not fed from the selected tray.	When you are using the Windows operating system, the printer driver settings override those set using the control panel. Set the desired input tray using the printer driver. See the printer driver Help.
A printed image is different from the image on the computer's display.	When you use some functions, such as enlargement and reduction, the layout of the image might be different from that displayed in the computer display.
It takes too much time to resume printing.	<ul> <li>The data is so large or complex that it takes time to process it. If the Ready indicator is blinking, the data is being processed. Just wait until it resumes.</li> <li>The printer was in the Energy Saver mode. To resume from the Energy Saver mode, the printer has to warm up, and this takes time until printing starts. To disable the Energy Saver mode, select [Off] for [Energy Saver Mode 2:] using Smart Organizing Monitor.</li> </ul>
It takes too much time to complete the print job.	<ul> <li>Photographs and other data intensive pages take a long time for the printer to process, so simply wait when printing such data.         Changing the settings with printer driver may help to speed up printing.         See the printer driver Help.     </li> <li>The data is so large or complex that takes time to process. If the Ready indicator is blinking, the data is being processed. Just wait until it resumes.</li> <li>If the Ready indicator on the control panel is flashing, the printer is warming up. Wait for a while.</li> </ul>
Images are cut off, or excess pages are printed.	If you are using paper smaller than the paper size selected in the application, use the same size paper as that selected in the application. If you cannot load paper of the correct size, use the reduction function to reduce the image, and then print. See the printer driver Help.

Status	Possible Causes, Descriptions, and Solutions
Photo images are coarse.	Some applications lower the resolution for making prints.
Fine dot pattern does not print.	Change the <b>[Dithering:]</b> setting in the printer driver's dialog box.  See the printer driver Help.
Solid lines are printed as broken lines.	Change the [Dithering:] setting in the printer driver's dialog box.  See the printer driver Help.
The whole printout is blurred.	<ul> <li>Paper is damp. Use paper that has been stored properly. See p.31 "Paper and Other Media".</li> <li>If you select [Toner Saving] on the [Print Quality] tab in the printer properties dialog box, printing is generally less dense.</li> <li>See the printer driver Help.</li> <li>Toner is almost depleted. If a toner indicator lights or flashes, or if an error message appears on the Smart Organizing Monitor dialog box, replace the print cartridge. See p.59 "Replacing the Print Cartridge".</li> <li>Condensation may have collected. If rapid change in temperature or humidity occurs, use this printer only after it has acclimatized.</li> </ul>
White streaks appear.	Toner is almost depleted. If a toner indicator lights or flashes, or if an error message appears on the Smart Organizing Monitor dialog box, replace the print cartridge. See p.59 "Replacing the Print Cartridge".
The backs of printed sheets are blemished.	<ul> <li>When removing a jammed sheet, the inside of the printer may have become dirtied. Print several sheets until they come out clean.</li> <li>If document size is larger than paper size, e.g. A4 document on B5 paper, the back of the next printed sheet may be dirtied.</li> </ul>
If rubbed with your finger, it smears out.	<ul> <li>The setting of the paper may not be correct. For example, although thick paper is used, the setting for thick paper may not be set.</li> <li>Check the paper settings of this printer. See p.34 "Types of Paper and Other Media".</li> <li>Check the paper settings of the printer driver. See the printer driver Help.</li> </ul>
The toner has run out and printing has stopped.	When the toner runs out, pressing the [Stop/Start] key allows you to print a few more pages, but the print quality of those pages cannot be guaranteed.
Printed envelopes come out creased.	Check if the green levers found inside the rear cover are properly set.

If the problem cannot be solved, contact your sales or service representative.

# **Additional Troubleshooting**

Problems	Solutions
Strange noise is heard.	If a supply was recently replaced or an option in the area the strange noise is coming from, check the supply or option is properly attached. If the strange noise persists, contact your sales or service representative.
No e-mail is received when an Alert occurs, and after resolving	Confirm the [Alert Messages] settings on Web Image Monitor or Smart Organizing Monitor.
an Alert.	When the power is turned off before the e-mail is transmitted, the e-mail will not be received.
	• Check the e-mail address set for the destination. If the e-mail was sent but not received, it is possible the destination was incorrect. Also check error mail information from the e-mail server.
The [Alert Messages] settings on Web Image Monitor or Smart Organizing Monitor are configured to send alert e-mail, but e-mail is not arriving.	After changing the setting, turn the printer's power off and then back on again.
When no date information is included in sent e-mail, the mail server has a malfunction.	Make the setting for obtaining time information from the SMTP server. For details, see Software Guide.
The printer is not detected after you click [Search Network Printer] in Smart Organizing Monitor.	The SNMP community name is not correctly configured. Open Smart Organizing Monitor or Web Image Monitor and set [Get community:] to "public".

# Note

☐ If the printer is still not operating satisfactorily, contact your sales or service representative. Consult with the store where the printer was purchased for information about the location of sales or service representatives.

# 8. Removing Misfed Paper

# When Paper is Jammed

If a paper jam occurs, the **Alert** indicator on the control panel flashes and the following message appears on the Smart Organizing Monitor dialog box:

"Paper Misfeed."

Open the indicated cover or pull out the indicated unit, and then remove any misfed paper.

# **#Important**

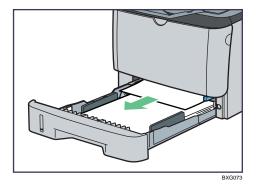
- ☐ Misfed paper may be covered in toner. Be careful not to get toner on your hands or clothes.
- ☐ Toner on prints made after removing misfed paper may be loose (inadequately fused). Make a few test prints until smudges no longer appear.
- ☐ Do not forcefully remove misfed paper, it will tear. Torn pieces remaining inside the printer will cause further misfeeds and possibly damage the printer.
- ☐ Paper jams can cause pages to be lost. Check your print job for missing pages and reprint any pages that did not print out.

# Removing Jammed Paper from the Inner/Tray 1/Tray 2

Use the following procedure to remove paper that has become jammed inside the printer or in the paper feed area.

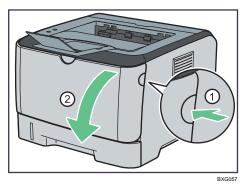
#### riangle CAUTION:

- The inside of this machine becomes very hot. Do not touch parts labelled "\textsum" (indicating a hot surface).
- 1 Pull tray 1 halfway out, and check for jammed paper. If there is jammed paper, remove it carefully.

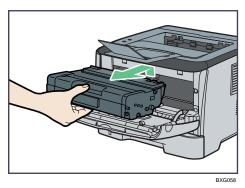


2 Carefully slide tray 1 back in until it stops.

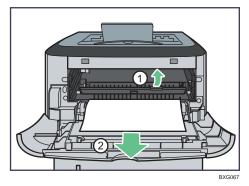
- If paper is loaded in the bypass tray, remove the paper.
- **4** Close the bypass tray.
- **5** Push the side button to open the front cover, and then carefully lower it.



**6** Carefully pull out the print cartridge horizontally, holding its center.

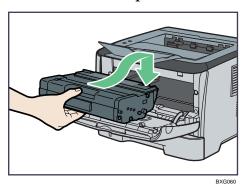


- Do not shake the removed print cartridge. Doing so can cause remaining toner to leak.
- Place the print cartridge on paper or similar material to avoid dirtying your workspace.
- **1** Lifting the guide plate, remove the jammed paper carefully.

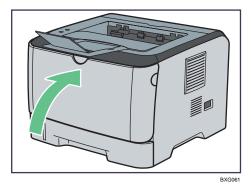


8

Slide the print cartridge in horizontally. When the cartridge can go no further, raise it slightly and push it fully in. Then push down on the cartridge until it clicks into place.



Using both hands, carefully push up the front cover until it closes.



# Note

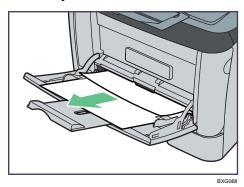
- ☐ If paper is jammed in tray 2 but is difficult to locate, pull out tray 2 to remove it. After removing the paper, carefully push tray 2 all the way back inside the printer.
- ☐ When closing the front cover, push the upper area of the cover firmly. After closing the cover, check that the error is cleared.

# **Removing Jammed Paper from the Bypass Tray**

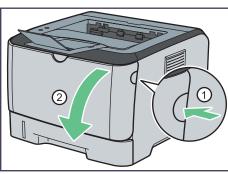
Use the following procedure to remove paper that has become jammed after being fed in from the bypass tray.

#### **A** CAUTION:

- The inside of this machine becomes very hot. Do not touch parts labelled "\( \triangle \)" (indicating a hot surface).
- If paper is jammed in the bypass tray input area, remove the jammed paper carefully.

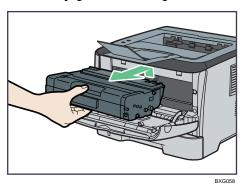


- **2** Close the bypass tray.
- B Push the side button to open the front cover, and then carefully lower it.

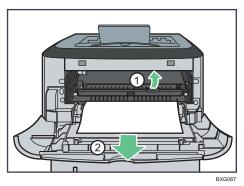


BXG057

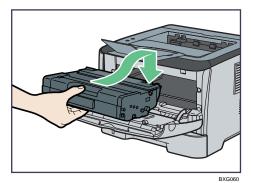
# **4** Carefully pull out the print cartridge horizontally, holding its center.



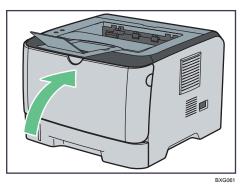
- Do not shake the removed print cartridge. Doing so can cause remaining toner to leak.
- Place the print cartridge on paper or similar material to avoid dirtying your workspace.
- **E** Lifting the guide plate, remove the jammed paper carefully.



Slide the print cartridge in horizontally. When the cartridge can go no further, raise it slightly and push it fully in. Then push down on the cartridge until it clicks into place.



# **1** Using both hands, carefully push up the front cover until it closes.



**∅** Note

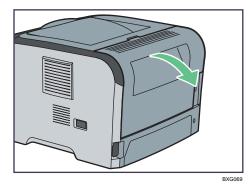
☐ When closing the front cover, push the upper area of the cover firmly. After closing the cover, check that the error is cleared.

# Removing Jammed Paper from the Exit Area/Duplex Unit

Use the following procedure to remove paper that has become jammed in the exit area or inside the duplex unit.

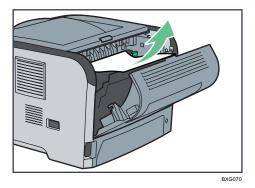
#### **CAUTION:**

- The inside of this machine becomes very hot. Do not touch parts labelled "\( \triangle \)" (indicating a hot surface).
- 1 Open the rear cover.

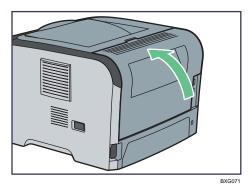


8

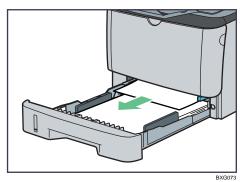
# **2** Remove the jammed paper carefully.



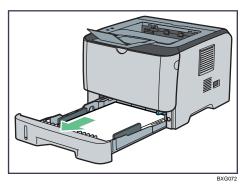
Close the rear cover.



Pull tray 1 halfway out, and check for jammed paper. If there is jammed paper, remove it carefully.



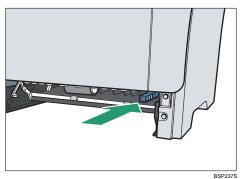
# **5** Pull tray 1 out completely with both hands.



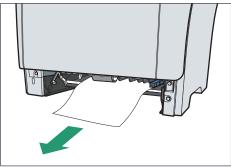
Place the tray on a flat surface.

# **6** Push the blue lever.

Pushing the blue lever lowers the duplex transport unit.

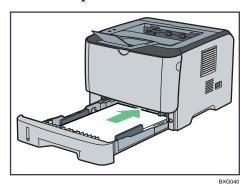


# **1** If there is jammed paper, carefully remove it.

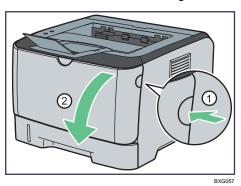


BSP120S

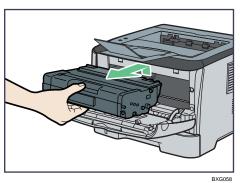
With the duplex transport unit still lowered, carefully slide tray 1 back in until it stops.



- If paper is loaded in the bypass tray, remove the paper and close the bypass tray.
- $f \Omega$  Push the side button to open the front cover, and then carefully lower it.

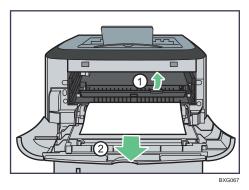


Carefully pull out the print cartridge horizontally, holding its center.

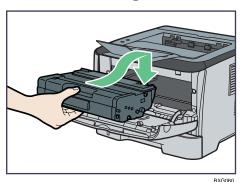


- Do not shake the removed print cartridge. Doing so can cause remaining toner to leak.
- Place the print cartridge on paper or similar material to avoid dirtying your workspace.

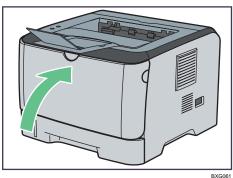
Lifting the guide plate, remove the jammed paper carefully.



Slide the print cartridge in horizontally. When the cartridge can go no further, raise it slightly and push it fully in. Then push down on the cartridge until it clicks into place.



Using both hands, carefully push up the front cover until it closes.



Note

☐ When closing the covers, push the covers firmly. After closing the covers, check that the error is cleared.

8

# 9. Appendix

# **Moving and Transporting the Printer**

#### **A CAUTION:**

- The printer weighs approximately 12 kg (26.4 lb.). When moving the printer, use the inset grips on both sides, and lift slowly in pairs. The printer will break or cause injury if dropped.
- Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before you move the machine.
   While moving the machine, you should take care that the power cord will not be damaged under the machine.
- When you disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet, always pull the plug (not the cable).
- When moving the printer after use, do not take out any of the toners, nor the waste toner bottle to prevent toner spill inside the machine.

Repack the printer in its original packing materials for transporting.

瓣	m	po	rta	nt
700	•••	PV		

- ☐ Be sure to disconnect all cables from the printer before transporting it.
- ☐ The printer is a precision piece of machinery. Be sure to handle it carefully when moving it.
- ☐ If the optional paper feed unit is installed, remove it from the printer, and then move them separately.
- ☐ Do not grip on the tray area when lifting the printer.

# Moving the printer in a short distance

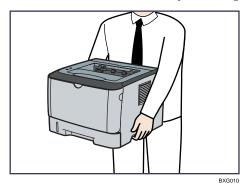
# **#Important**

 $\square$  Do not remove the print cartridge when moving the printer.

# **1** Be sure to check the following points:

- The power switch is turned off.
- The power cable is unplugged from the wall outlet.
- The interface cable is unplugged from the printer.

# **2** If tray 2 is installed, remove it.



4 If you have removed tray 2, reinstall it.



☐ Be sure to hold the printer level while carrying it. To prevent toner from spilling, move the printer carefully.

# Moving over a Long Distance

If you intend to move the printer over a long distance, you must pack it well. Empty all the paper trays, but do not remove the print cartridge. Take care not to tip or tilt the printer during transit.

# **∰**Important

☐ Do not remove the print cartridge when moving the printer.

# **1** Be sure to check the following points:

- The power switch is turned off.
- The power cord is unplugged from the wall outlet.
- All other cables are unplugged from the printer.
- All paper trays are empty.

# 2 If tray 2 is installed, remove it.



- ☐ Toner might spill inside the printer if the printer is not kept level during transit.
- ☐ For more information about moving the printer, contact your sales or service representative.

9

# **Disposal**

Ask your sales or service representative for information about correct disposal of this printer.

# Consumables

#### **A** CAUTION:

 Our products are engineered to meet high standards of quality and functionality, and we recommend that you use only the expendable supplies available at an authorized dealer.

# **Print Cartridges**

Print cartridge	Average printable number of pages per cartridge *1	
Black	2,500 pages, 5,000 pages	

<sup>\*1</sup> The printable number of pages is based on pages that are compliant with ISO/IEC 19752 and the image density set as the factory default. ISO/IEC 19752 is an international standard on measurement of printable pages, set by the International Organization for Standardization.

# ▶ Note If print cartridges are not changed when necessary, printing will become impossible. For easy replacement, we recommend you purchase and store extra print cartridges. The actual number of printable pages varies depending on the image volume and density, number of pages printed at a time, paper type and paper size used, and environmental conditions such as temperature and humidity. Print cartridges may need to be changed sooner than indicated above due to deterioration over the period of use. Print cartridges (consumables) are not covered by warranty. However, if there is a problem, contact the store where they were purchased. When you first use this printer, use the print cartridge packaged with the printer.

 $\square$  The supplied print cartridge is good for approximately 1,500 pages.

# **Specifications**

This section lists the printer's specifications.

## **Main Unit**

### Configuration

Desktop

#### Print process

Laser electrostatic transfer

### ❖ Warm-up time

Less than 20 seconds (23 °C, 71.6 °F)

## Paper sizes

• Standard paper sizes A4, B5 JIS, A5, B6-S, A6, Legal ( $8^1/_2$ " × 14"), Letter ( $8^1/_2$ " × 11"), Half Letter-S ( $5^1/_2$ " ×  $8^1/_2$ "), Executive ( $7^1/_4$ " ×  $10^1/_2$ "), 8" × 13",  $8^1/_2$ " × 13", Folio ( $8^1/_4$ " × 13"), 16K (195 × 267 mm), Com 10 ( $4^1/_8$ "×9 $^1/_2$ "),

Monarch  $(3^7/8"\times7^1/2")$ , C5 Env  $(162\times229 \text{ mm})$ , C6 Env  $(114\times162 \text{ mm})$ , DL Env  $(110\times220 \text{ mm})$ 

- Custom size
  - Tray 1
     100 to 216 mm (3.94 to 8.50 inches) in width, 148 to 356 mm (5.83 to 14.02 inches) in length
  - Bypass Tray
     90 to 216 mm (3.54 to 8.50 inches) in width, 140 to 356 mm (5.51 to 14.02 inches) in length

# ❖ Paper output capacity

Standard 125 sheets ( $80 \text{ g/m}^2$ , 20 lb.)

# Paper input capacity

- Tray 1 250 sheets (80 g/m², 20 lb.)
- Tray 2 (option) 250 sheets (80 g/m², 20 lb.)
- Bypass tray 50 sheets (80 g/m<sup>2</sup>, 20 lb.)

# 9

### ❖ Paper weight

- Tray 1 52 to 162 g/m<sup>2</sup> (13.8 to 43.0 lb.)
- Tray 2 (option) 60 to 105 g/m<sup>2</sup> (16.0 to 28.0 lb.)
- Bypass tray
   52 to 162 g/m² (13.8 to 43.0 lb.)

#### ❖ Memory

64 MB

#### ❖ Power source

- 120V 120 V, 60 Hz, 10 A or more (when fully equipped)
- **220-240V** 220-240 V, 50/60 Hz, 5 A or more (when fully equipped)

### **❖** Power consumption

- Maximum power consumption
   120V : 850 W, 220-240V : 880 W
- Energy Saver mode 1 70 W or less
- Energy Saver mode 2 5 W or less

# **❖** Dimensions (Width × Depth × Height)

 $370 \times 392 \times 262^{*1}$  mm (14.6 × 15.5 × 10.4 \*1 inches) \*1 If tray 2 is installed, the height increases by 89 mm (3.5 inches).

# ❖ Weight (printer body with consumables)

Approximately 12 kg (26.4 lb.)

# Printing speed (600 dpi)

28 pages per minute (A4) / 30 pages per minute (Letter)

#### Resolution

600 dpi (Maximum: 1200 × 600 dpi)

# ❖ First print speed

8 seconds or less (A4/Letter,  $600 \times 600$  dpi)

#### ❖ Interface

- Ethernet (10BASE-T, 100BASE-TX)
- USB 2.0

## Printer language

PCL 6, PostScript 3

#### ❖ Fonts

80 fonts

# ❖ Network protocol

TCP/IP, IPP

# Paper Feed Unit TK1080

## ❖ Paper capacity

250 sheets

# ❖ Paper size

A4, B5 JIS, A5, Legal  $(8^{1}/2" \times 14")$ , Letter  $(8^{1}/2" \times 11)$ , Half Letter  $(5^{1}/2" \times 8^{1}/2")$ 

# **❖** Dimensions (Width × Depth × Height)

 $370 \times 392 \times 89 \text{ mm} (14.6 \times 15.5 \times 3.5 \text{ inches})$ 

### ❖ Paper weight

60 to  $105 \text{ g/m}^2$  (16.0 to 28.0 lb.)

## ❖ Weight

Less than 2.4 kg (5.3 lb.)

# Electromagnetic Interference

If this machine is located close to another electronic device, both devices may malfunction due electromagnetic interference.

Televisions and radios may produce noise if located too close to this machine. If this happens, do the following:

- Move the television or radio as far as possible from the machine.
- Change the position of the antenna of the television or radio.
- Use a different wall outlet on a different circuit.

O

# **INDEX**

tray 2, 50

Α	M	
Additional troubleshooting, 83 Appendix, 95 Auto duplex, 4	Manual duplex, 4 Manuals for this printer, 2 Model types, 4 Moving and transporting the printer, 95 Moving over a long distance, 96	
Cleaning, 65	N	
Connecting the printer  network connection, 27	Network, 27	
USB connection, 29 Consumables, 98	0	
D	Opening manuals, 6	
Disposal, 97	Options, 23 Other printing problems, 79	
<u>E</u>	Р	
Error and status messages, 69 Ethernet, 27 Ethernet port, 27	Panel indicator, 74 Paper and other media, 31 Paper feed roller, 66 Paper feed unit, 23, 50, 101	
F	Paper not supported, 38	
Friction pad, 66	Paper recommendations, 33 Positions of WARNING and CAUTION labels 1	
Guide to the printer control panel, 12 exterior, 9 interior, 11 rear view, 10	WARNING and CAUTION labels, 1 Power switch symbols, 1 Print area, 39 Print cartridge, 59, 98 Printer does not print, 75 Printer types, 4	
н	R	
How to read this manual, 3	Removing manuals from your computer, 7 Removing misfed paper, 85 bypass tray, 88	
Installing manuals on your computer, 5 Installing the optional paper feed unit, 23 Installing the printer, 13	duplex unit, 90 exit area, 90 inner, 85 tray 1, 85 tray 2, 85	
Loading envelopes, 55 Loading paper, 33, 41 bypass tray, 53 tray 1, 41 tray 2, 50	Replacing the print cartridge, 59	

#### S

```
Setting the paper type, 34
Smart Organizing Monitor, 34, 69
Specification, 99
Specifying standard size paper

tray 1, 41

tray 2, 50
Storing paper, 33
```

#### Т

Toner, 59
Tray 2, 23
Turning the power on, 21
Type 1 model, 4
Type 2 model, 4
Types of paper, 34

#### U

Unpacking, 16 USB port, 29 Using manuals, 5

#### W

Where to put the printer, 13

(US)

The meanings of the symbols for the switches on this machine are as follows:

POWER ON.

O:POWER OFF.

#### **Trademarks**

Microsoft<sup>®</sup>, Windows<sup>®</sup>, Windows Server<sup>®</sup>, and Windows Vista<sup>®</sup> are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Adobe, Acrobat, Acrobat Reader, PostScript, and Reader are registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

PCL® is a registered trademark of Hewlett-Packard Company.

Monotype is a registered trademark of Monotype Imaging, Inc.

IPS is a trademark or registered trademark of Zoran Corporation and/or its subsidiaries in the United States or other countries.

Apple, Macintosh, and Mac OS are trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and might be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all rights to those marks.

The proper names of the Windows operating systems are as follows:

#### The product names of Windows 2000 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional

Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Server

Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Advanced Server

#### The product names of Windows XP are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional

Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition

#### The product names of Windows Vista are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows Vista® Ultimate

Microsoft® Windows Vista® Enterprise

Microsoft® Windows Vista® Business

Microsoft® Windows Vista® Home Premium

Microsoft® Windows Vista® Home Basic

#### The product names of Windows Server 2003 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Standard Edition

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Enterprise Edition

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Web Edition

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Datacenter Edition

#### The product names of Windows Server 2003 R2 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 R2 Standard Edition

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 R2 Enterprise Edition

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 R2 Datacenter Edition

#### The product names of Windows Server 2008 are as follows:

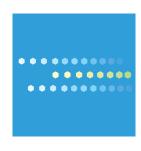
Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Standard

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Enterprise

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Datacenter



PostScript 3 in this manual stands for "Adobe PostScript 3 Emulation".

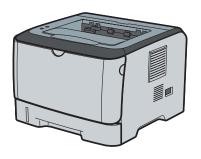






# SP 3400N/SP 3410DN

# Operating Instructions Software Guide



- 1 Preparing for Printing
- 2 Setting Up the Printer Driver
- 3 Other Print Operations
- 4 Monitoring and Configuring the Printer
- 5 Using a Print Server
- 6 Special Operations under Windows
- 7 Mac OS X Configuration
- 8 Appendix

#### Introduction

This manual contains detailed instructions and notes on the operation and use of this machine. For your safety and benefit, read this manual carefully before using the machine. Keep this manual in a handy place for quick reference.

#### **Important**

Contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice. In no event will the company be liable for direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages as a result of handling or operating the machine.

For good print quality, the supplier recommends that you use genuine toner from the supplier.

The supplier shall not be responsible for any damage or expense that might result from the use of parts other than genuine parts from the supplier with your office products.

Do not copy or print any item for which reproduction is prohibited by law.

Copying or printing the following items is generally prohibited by local law:

bank notes, revenue stamps, bonds, stock certificates, bank drafts, checks, passports, driver's licenses.

The preceding list is meant as a guide only and is not inclusive. We assume no responsibility for its completeness or accuracy. If you have any questions concerning the legality of copying or printing certain items, consult with your legal advisor.

#### Notes:

Some illustrations in this manual might be slightly different from the machine.

Certain options might not be available in some countries. For details, please contact your local dealer.

Depending on which country you are in, certain units may be optional. For details, please contact your local dealer.

# **TABLE OF CONTENTS**

Manuals for This Printer	1			
How to Read This Manual	2			
Symbols				
Printer Types	3			
1. Preparing for Printing				
Confirming the Connection Method	5			
Network Connection				
Local Connection				
Installing Drivers and Software				
Installing the Printer Driver in a Network Environment				
Installing the PCL Printer Driver				
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer DriverInstalling the Printer Driver to Use As a Windows Network Printer				
Installing the Printer Driver Using USB				
Installing the PCL Printer Driver				
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 2000)				
(Windows XP and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2)				
(Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008) Troubleshooting USB				
If a Message Appears during Installation				
Making Option Settings for the Printer				
Conditions for Bidirectional Communication				
If Bidirectional Communication Is Disabled				
2. Setting Up the Printer Driver				
Accessing the Printer Properties	25			
Windows 2000 - Making Printer Settings				
Windows XP and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 - Making Printer Settings				
Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008- Making Printer Settings	29			
3. Other Print Operations				
If Errors Occur with the Specified Paper Size and Type	31			
Performing Form Feed				
Canceling a Print Job	31			
Canceling a Print Job				
Canceling a Print Job Using the Control Panel				
Canceling a Print Job from the Computer				
Collate				
Cover				
Watermark	35			
Manual Duplex	36			

# 4. Monitoring and Configuring the Printer

Using Web Image Monitor	37
Displaying Top Page	39
Changing the Interface Language	39
Checking the System Information	
Configuring the Paper Settings	
Configuring the Network Settings	
Printing Reports	
Configuring the Administrator Settings	
Displaying Web Image Monitor Help	56
Using Smart Organizing Monitor	57
Installing Smart Organizing Monitor	57
Displaying the Smart Organizing Monitor Dialog Box	
Displaying the Printer Status	
Displaying the Printer Information	
Printer Configuration	62
Printer Status Notification by E-Mail	66
Mail Authentication	
SNMP	68
Reading the Configuration Page	
5 Using a Print Sarvar	
5. Using a Print Server	
Preparing Print Server	73
6. Special Operations under Windows	
Printing Files Directly from Windows	
Setup	
Printing Commands	
7. Mac OS X Configuration	
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver	79
	79
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver  Specifying the Printer  Using USB	<b>79</b> 80
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver	<b>79</b> 80
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver  Specifying the Printer  Using USB	<b>79</b> 80 81
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver  Specifying the Printer  Using USB  Using TCP/IP  Setting Up Options	<b>79</b> 80 81 84
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver  Specifying the Printer  Using USB  Using TCP/IP  Setting Up Options  Setting Up for Printing	<b>79</b> 80 81 <b>84</b>
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver  Specifying the Printer  Using USB.  Using TCP/IP  Setting Up Options  Setting Up for Printing.  Making paper settings from an application.	<b>79</b> 80818485
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver  Specifying the Printer  Using USB Using TCP/IP  Setting Up Options  Setting Up for Printing Making paper settings from an application. Setting up for printing from an application.	
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver  Specifying the Printer  Using USB.  Using TCP/IP  Setting Up Options  Setting Up for Printing.  Making paper settings from an application.  Setting up for printing from an application.  Canceling a Print Job from the Computer	
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver  Specifying the Printer  Using USB Using TCP/IP  Setting Up Options  Setting Up for Printing Making paper settings from an application. Setting up for printing from an application. Canceling a Print Job from the Computer  Using PostScript 3.	
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver  Specifying the Printer  Using USB Using TCP/IP  Setting Up Options  Setting Up for Printing Making paper settings from an application. Setting up for printing from an application.  Canceling a Print Job from the Computer  Using PostScript 3  Using Smart Organizing Monitor	
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver  Specifying the Printer  Using USB Using TCP/IP  Setting Up Options  Setting Up for Printing Making paper settings from an application. Setting up for printing from an application.  Canceling a Print Job from the Computer  Using PostScript 3  Using Smart Organizing Monitor Installing Smart Organizing Monitor	
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver  Specifying the Printer  Using USB  Using TCP/IP  Setting Up Options  Setting Up for Printing.  Making paper settings from an application.  Setting up for printing from an application.  Canceling a Print Job from the Computer  Using PostScript 3.  Using Smart Organizing Monitor  Installing Smart Organizing Monitor  Displaying the Smart Organizing Monitor Dialog Box	
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver  Specifying the Printer  Using USB Using TCP/IP  Setting Up Options  Setting Up for Printing Making paper settings from an application. Setting up for printing from an application.  Canceling a Print Job from the Computer  Using PostScript 3  Using Smart Organizing Monitor Installing Smart Organizing Monitor	

# 8. Appendix

Software and Utilities Included on the CD-ROM	97
Printer Drivers for this Printer	
Smart Organizing Monitor	
Cautions to Take When Using in a Network	
Using DHCP	
Using Adobe PageMaker Version 6.0, 6.5, or 7.0	
When Using Windows Terminal Service/Citrix Presentation Server/	
Citrix XenApp	101
Operating Environment	
Supported Printer Drivers	101
Limitations	102
INDEX	103

# **Manuals for This Printer**

For particular functions, see the relevant parts of the manual.

#### ❖ Safety Information

Provides information on safe usage of this printer. To avoid injury and prevent damage to the printer, be sure to read this.

#### ❖ Quick Installation Guide

Contains procedures for removing the printer from its box and connecting it to a computer.

#### ❖ Hardware Guide

Contains information about paper and procedures such as installing options, replacing consumables, responding to error messages, and resolving jams.

#### **❖** Software Guide (This manual)

Contains procedures for using this printer in a network environment and utilizing the software.

# **How to Read This Manual**

# **Symbols**

This manual uses the following symbols:

# **∰**Important

Indicates points to pay attention to when using the machine, and explanations of likely causes of paper misfeeds, damage to originals, or loss of data. Be sure to read these explanations.

#### Note

Indicates supplementary explanations of the machine's functions, and instructions on resolving user errors.

#### 

This symbol is located at the end of sections. It indicates where you can find further relevant information.

#### []

Indicates the names of keys and buttons.

Indicates the names of keys on the printer's control panel.

# **Printer Types**

This printer comes in two models that have different duplex functions.

When describing procedures that are model-specific, this manual refers to the different printer models as Type 1 or Type 2. The following table describes the model types.

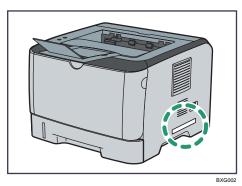
#### Model types

Model type	Model name	Duplex Printing
Type 1	SP 3400N	Manual
Type 2	SP 3410DN	Automatic

Furthermore, the **120V** symbol is used for information that is relevant only to the 120 V model printer, and the **220-240V** symbol is used for information that is relevant only to the 220 to 240 V model printer.

## Checking the voltage rating of your printer

Check the label on the left side of your printer for the voltage rating.



# 1. Preparing for Printing

# **Confirming the Connection Method**

This printer supports network and local connections.

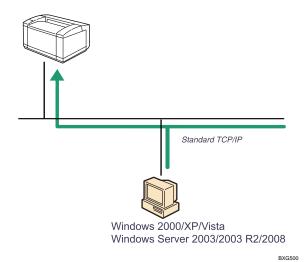
Before installing the printer driver, check how the printer is connected. Follow the driver installation procedure that is appropriate to the connection method.

#### **Network Connection**

This printer can be used as a Windows printing port or network printer.

#### Using this printer as the Windows printing port

Network connections can be established via Ethernet.



## ❖ Operating system

Windows 2000/XP/Vista, and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2/2008

#### Connection method

Ethernet (10BASE-T/100BASE-TX)

#### Available ports

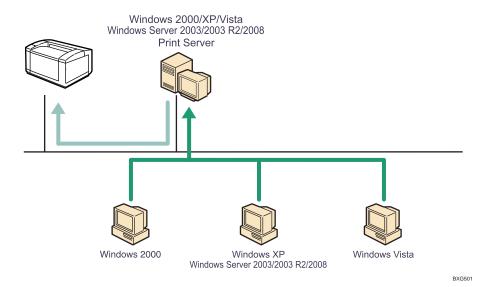
Standard TCP/IP

# 

For details about how to use this printer as the Windows printing port, see p.8 "Installing the Printer Driver in a Network Environment".

#### Using as a network printer

This printer can be used as the Windows network printer.



## 

For details about how to use this printer as a Windows network printer, see p.15 "Installing the Printer Driver to Use As a Windows Network Printer".

# **Local Connection**

Local connections can be established via USB connections.

# 

For details about how to install the printer driver, see p.16 "Installing the Printer Driver Using USB".

# **Installing Drivers and Software**

You can install the necessary drivers and software for this printer from the supplied CD-ROM.

The supplied drivers and software are supported by the following operating systems:

#### ❖ PCL 6 printer driver

Windows 2000/XP/Vista and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2/2008

#### ❖ PostScript 3 printer driver

Windows 2000/XP/Vista and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2/2008 Mac OS X 10.2.8, 10.3, 10.4, 10.5

# Smart Organizing Monitor

Windows 2000/XP/Vista and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2/2008 Mac OS X 10.2.8, 10.3, 10.4, 10.5

## Note

☐ The printer driver for the 64-bit Windows is not included on the supplied CD-ROM. If your operating system is the 64-bit Windows, download the drivers from the supplier's Web site, and then store the files in an easily accessible folder.

# Installing the Printer Driver in a Network Environment

This section explains how to install the printer driver that allows you to use this printer in a network environment.

# Installing the PCL Printer Driver

The following four steps are required to use this printer in the network environment.

- ① Print the test page
- ② Install Smart Organizing Monitor if necessary
- 3 Specify the printer's IP address if necessary
- ④ Install the printer driver

#### Note

☐ If the printer is obtaining its IP address automatically from a DHCP server, you do not need to perform "2. Install Smart Organizing Monitor" and "3. Specify the printer's IP address".

### Printing a test page

To install the printer driver, you must first confirm the printer's IP address.

If the printer is not obtaining its IP address automatically from a DHCP server, enter the MAC address printed on the test page as the IP address in Smart Organizing Monitor.

Make sure the network cable is properly connected to the printer before you print the test page.

- 1 Turn the printer's power switch to off, and then wait a few seconds.
- While pressing down the [Job Reset] key, turn the printer's power switch back to on, and then keep the key pressed down until the Alert indicator flashes once.
- 3 Printing starts when the printer is fully warmed up.

Printing starts approximately 30 seconds after the Alert Indicator starts flashing.

#### Note

- ☐ If the printer cannot obtain its IP address from a DHCP server, install Smart Organizing Monitor and specify the IP address, before installing the printer driver.
- ☐ You can also use Web Image Monitor to change the IP address obtained from a DHCP server. To access Web Image Monitor, use the IP address printed on the test page.

# 

For details about the installation procedure, see p.9 "Installing Smart Organizing Monitor".

For details about Web Image Monitor, see p.37 "Using Web Image Monitor".

#### **Installing Smart Organizing Monitor**

Smart Organizing Monitor can be installed from the CD-ROM provided with this printer.

# **∰**Important

- ☐ If you want to specify the printer's IP address manually, or manage several different printer models, you must install Smart Organizing Monitor separately for each printer model.
- ☐ If the printer is obtaining its IP address automatically from a DHCP server, you do not need to install Smart Organizing Monitor separately. Proceed to p.11 "Installing the printer driver" and install the printer driver.
- 1 Quit all applications currently running.
- **2** Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

**3** Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

- 4 Click [Smart Organizing Monitor].
- Select a language for Smart Organizing Monitor, and then click [Next >].

  The [Smart Organizing Monitor Setup] dialog box appears.
- Click [Next >].

The software license agreement appears.

- After reading the agreement, click [Yes].
  - The [Select Destination Folder] dialog box appears.
- 8 Click [Next >].

Click [Browse...], if you want to change the destination folder.

- In the [Select Program Folder] dialog box, click [Next >].
- When the [InstallShield Wizard Complete] dialog box appears, click [Finish].

To continue the installation, leave the [Printer Driver and Utilities] dialog box open.

#### Note

☐ Smart Organizing Monitor will appear in the language selected in step 5, not the language selected in step 3.

#### Specifying the printer's IP address

Use the following procedure to specify the printer's IP address using Smart Organizing Monitor.

## **∰**Important

- ☐ If the printer is obtaining its IP address automatically from a DHCP server, you do not need to perform this procedure. Proceed to p.11 "Installing the printer driver" and install the printer driver.
- 1 Connect the printer and computer using an Ethernet cable.
- On the [Start] menu, point to [All Programs], and then point to [Smart Organizing Monitor for 3400 Series] > [Smart Organizing Monitor for 3400 Series Status].

The [Smart Organizing Monitor] dialog box appears.

In a Windows 2000 environment, point to [Programs] on the [Start] menu, and then point to [Smart Organizing Monitor for 3400 Series] > [Smart Organizing Monitor for 3400 Series Status].

Click [IP Address].

The [IP Address Setting] dialog box appears.

In the [MAC Address] box, enter the printer's MAC address that was printed on the test page. Then, in the [IP Address] box, enter the IP address you want to set for the printer.

Enter the subnet mask and gateway address if necessary.

Click [OK].

A confirmation message appears.

- Click [OK].
- Click [Close] to close the Smart Organizing Monitor dialog box.

#### Installing the printer driver

Use the following procedure to install the printer driver.

On the [Printer Drivers and Utilities] dialog box, click [PCL 6 Printer Driver].

If you have already closed the **[Printer Drivers and Utilities]** dialog box, launch "Setup.exe" from the CD-ROM root directory.

The software license agreement appears.

- 2 After reading the agreement, click [I accept the agreement.], and then click [Next >].
- In the dialog box that appears, select the [Search for network printers.] check box, and then click [Next >].

If the search fails, the printer driver is installed via port LPT1.

Check the port settings and printer's IP address again, before reconfiguring the settings.

- When the list of found printers appears, click this printer (whose IP address you confirmed before the installation), and then click [Next >].
- Double-click the printer name to display the printer's settings, change the settings as required, and then click [Continue].
- If a message appears informing you that the installation was successfully completed, click [Finish].

#### Note

- ☐ When you click [Finish], the [Digital Signature Not Found] dialog box might appear. To continue the installation, click [Yes].
- ☐ Auto Run might not work under certain operating system settings. If this is the case, launch "Setup.exe" from the CD-ROM root directory.
- ☐ To stop the selected software installing, click **[Cancel]** before the installation is complete.
- ☐ A message appears if there is a newer version of the printer driver already installed. If there is, you cannot install the printer driver using Auto Run. If you still want to install the printer driver, use [Add Printer]. See p.22 "If a Message Appears during Installation".

# 

For details about reconfiguring the printer settings when the search for network printer fails, see p.12 "If the network printer search fails".

For details about the network connection, see Hardware Guide.

#### If the network printer search fails

This section explains how to reconfigure the settings if the network printer search fails during the installation.

Before reconfiguring the settings, print a test page to obtain the printer's IP address, and then configure the necessary settings.

#### Reconfigure the printer's IP address

For details about reconfiguring the printer's IP address, see p.10 "Specifying the printer's IP address".

#### Reconfigure the port settings

- ① On the [Start] menu, open the [Printers and Faxes] window.
- ② Click the icon of this printer. On the **[File]** menu, click **[Properties]**. The printer properties dialog box appears.
- 3 Click the [Ports] tab, and then click [Add Port].
- 4 Click [Standard TCP/IP Port], and then click [New Port...]. The Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard appears.
- ⑤ Click [Next >].
- ⑥ Enter the printer's IP address that is printed on the test page, and then click [Next >].
  - If a screen prompting you to specify [Device Type] appears, select the model of your printer, and then click [Next >].
- ⑦ Click [Finish].

# Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver

## **#Important**

- ☐ Before installing the PostScript 3 printer driver, print the test page to obtain the printer's IP address. For details, see p.8 "Printing a test page".
- ☐ To install this printer driver, you must have an account that has Manage Printers permission. Log on as an Administrators group member.
- 1 Quit all applications currently running.
- **2** Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

**3** Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

4 Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].

The Add Printer Wizard starts.

- Click [Next >].
- 6 Click [Local printer], and then click [Next >].

In a Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008 environment, click [Add a local printer].

- Click [Create a new port].
- Click [Standard TCP/IP Port], and then click [Next >].

  The [Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard] dialog box appears.
- Olick [Next >].
- Enter the printer's IPv4 address in the [Printer Name or IP Address] box, and then click [OK].

The IPv4 address you enter here is the address you have checked on the test page.

In a Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008 environment, make the following settings in the dialog box that appears, and then click [Next >].

- ① In [Device Type] list, select an item.
  You can select [Autodetect], [TCP/IP Device], or [Web Services Device].
- ② Enter an IP address in the [Hostname or IP address:] box.
- ③ If necessary, enter a port name in the [Port name] box.

If a screen prompting you to specify [Device Type] appears, select the model of your printer, and then click [Next >].

л	
ы	

- Click [Finish].
- Check that the name of this printer whose driver you want to install is selected, and then click [Next >].
- Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next >].

  Select the [Yes] check box to configure the printer as default.
- Specify whether or not to share this printer, and then click [Next >].
- E Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Next >].
- Click [Finish].

The printer driver installation starts.

## Note

- ☐ When you click [Finish], the [Digital Signature Not Found] dialog box may appear. To continue the installation, click [Yes].
- ☐ Auto Run might not work under certain operating system settings. If this is the case, launch "Setup.exe" from the CD-ROM root directory.
- ☐ The printer driver in the selected language will be installed.
- ☐ To stop the selected software installation, click **[Cancel]** before the installation is complete.

# **₽** Reference

For details about checking the printer's IP address, see p.8 "Printing a test page".

For details about reconfiguring the printer settings when the network printer search fails, see p.12 "If the network printer search fails".

# Installing the Printer Driver to Use As a Windows Network Printer

This section explains how to install the printer driver for using this printer as a Windows network printer.

# **#Important**

☐ Before you can make the following settings, you must configure this printer as a Windows network printer. For details about configuring a Windows network printer, see p.73 "Using a Print Server".

The following example procedure explains installing the printer driver under Windows XP.

For details, see Windows Help.

- 1 On the [Start] menu, click [Control Panel].
- 2 Click [Printers and Other Hardware], and then click your computer's [Printers and Faxes] folder.
- Click [Add a printer].

The Add Printer Wizard appears.

- 4 Click [Next >].
- Click [Network printer] or [A network printer, or printer attached to another computer], and then click [Next >].
- 6 Select [Browse for a printer], and then click [Next >].
- Double-click the computer name you want to use as a print server in the [Shared printers] window.
- Select this printer from the list of the shared printers, and then click [Next >].
- Select whether or not to use this printer as the default printer, and then click [Next >].
- Click [Finish].

# **Installing the Printer Driver Using USB**

This section explains how to install the printer drivers using USB. The printer drivers can be installed from the CD-ROM provided with this printer.

# **Installing the PCL Printer Driver**

# **∰**Important

- ☐ To install this printer driver, you must have an account that has Manage Printers permission. Log on as an Administrators group member.
- 1 Quit all applications currently running.
- **2** Check the following:
  - The printer's USB cable is disconnected
  - The printer's main power switch is turned to off
- Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

- **A** Select the interface language, and then click [OK].
- Click [PCL 6 Printer Driver].

The software license agreement appears.

- After reading the agreement, click [I accept the agreement.], and then click [Next >].
- In the [Method to install printer driver] dialog box, clear the [Search for network printers.] check box, select the [Connect a printer using a USB cable.] check box, and then click [Next >].
- Select this printer, and then click [Next >].

A message appears, asking you to check that the USB cable is not connected and the printer's main power switch is turned to off.

- Check the USB cable and the printer status, and then click [Next >].
- When the [<Auto-detect USB Port>] dialog box appears, connect this printer to the computer using a USB cable, and then turn the printer's main power switch to on.

USB auto detection begins.

- When the dialog box asking you to use this printer as the default printer appears, click either key.
- When a message appears informing you that the installation was successfully completed, click [Finish].

#### Note

- ☐ In a Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008 environment, depending on security settings, the **[User Account Control]** dialog box might appear after you insert the CD-ROM. If this is the case, click **[Allow]**.
- ☐ If the printer driver is already installed, plug and play is enabled and the printer connected to the USB port appears automatically in the **[Printers]** window.
- ☐ When USB is first used, plug and play starts. Then, the [New Hardware Found], [Device Driver Wizard] or [Add New Hardware Wizard] dialog box appears, depending on the operating system.
- ☐ To disable Auto Run, press the left [Shift] key when inserting the CD-ROM into the drive and keep it pressed until the computer finishes reading from the CD-ROM.
- ☐ The number after "USB" varies depending on the number of printers connected.
- ☐ A message appears if the printer connection fails. Check the USB cable is connected and the printer's main power switch is turned to on, and then click [Retry].
- ☐ To stop USB auto detection, click [Stop Auto-detecting].
- ☐ The USB port is available only for the printer driver that is installed first. To install additional drivers for this printer, install them using other ports (such as LPT1). Then, after the installation, change the port settings to the specified USB port.

# Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 2000)

## **#Important**

☐ To install this printer driver, you must have an account that has Manage Printers permission. Log on as an Administrators group member.

If the printer driver has already been installed, plug and play is enabled, and the icon of the printer connected to the "USB" port is added to the [Printers] window.

If the printer driver is not installed, follow the plug and play instructions of the printer to install it from the CD-ROM provided.

- **1** Check the printer's power switch is turned to off.
- **2** Connect the printer and computer using the USB cable.

Connect the USB cable firmly.

3 Turn the printer's power switch back to on.

Plug and play is enabled and the **[Found New Hardware Wizard]** dialog box appears, and USB Printing Support is installed automatically.

- In the [Found New Hardware Wizard] dialog box, click [Search for a suitable driver for my device (recommended)], and then click [Next >].
- Select the [Specify location] check box, and then click [Next >].
- **6** Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

When Auto Run starts, click [Exit].

**2** Specify the location where the source files of the printer driver are stored.

If the CD-ROM drive is D, the source files of the PostScript 3 printer driver are stored in the following location:

D:\DRIVERS\PS\XP\_VISTA\(Language)\DISK1

- Check the printer driver location, and then click [OK].
- 9 Click [Next >].

# Click [Finish].

If the printer driver has already been installed, plug and play is enabled, and the icon of the printer connected to the "USB001" port is added to the [Printers] window.

## Note

- ☐ To disable Auto Run, press the **[Shift]** key when inserting the CD-ROM into the drive and keep it pressed until the computer finishes reading from the CD-ROM.
- ☐ The number after "USB" varies depending on the number of printers connected.
- ☐ The USB port is available only for the printer driver that is installed first. To install additional drivers for this printer, install them using other ports (such as LPT1). Then, after the installation, change the port settings to the specified USB port.

# Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows XP and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2)

# **#Important**

☐ To install this printer driver, you must have an account that has Manage Printers permission. Log on as an Administrators group member.

If the printer driver has already been installed, plug and play is enabled, and the icon of the printer connected to the "USB" port is added to the [Printers] window.

If the printer driver is not installed, follow the plug-and-play instructions of the printer to install it from the CD-ROM provided.

- **1** Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.
  - When Auto Run starts, click [Exit].
- **2** Check the printer's power switch is turned to off.
- **2** Connect the printer and computer using the USB cable.

Connect the USB cable firmly.

1 Turn the printer's power switch back to on.

The Plug and Play is enabled and the **[Found New Hardware Wizard]** dialog box appears, and USB Printing Support is installed automatically.

- Select [No, not this time], and then click [Next >].
- In the [Found New Hardware Wizard] dialog box, click [Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)], and then click [Next >].
- Select the [Include this location in the search:] check box, and then click [Browse].

1

**Specify** the location where the source files of the printer driver are stored.

If the CD-ROM drive is D, the source files of the PostScript 3 printer driver are stored in the following location:

D:\DRIVERS\PS\XP\_VISTA\(Language)\DISK1

- Check the printer driver location, and then click [OK].
- Click [Next >].
- Click [Finish].

If the printer driver has already been installed, plug and play is enabled, and the icon of the printer connected to the "USB001" port is added to the [Printers] window.

#### Note

- ☐ To disable Auto Run, press the **[Shift]** key when inserting the CD-ROM into the drive and keep it pressed until the computer finishes reading from the CD-ROM.
- ☐ The number after "USB" varies depending on the number of printers connected.
- ☐ The USB port is available only for the printer driver that is installed first. To install additional drivers for this printer, install them using other ports (such as LPT1). Then, after the installation, change the port settings to the specified USB port.

# Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008)

# **∰**Important

☐ To install this printer driver, you must have an account that has Manage Printers permission. Log on as an Administrators group member.

If the printer driver is already installed and plug and play is enabled, the icon of the printer connected to the "usb" port appears in the **[Printers]** window.

The printer drivers can be installed from the CD-ROM provided with this printer.

If the printer driver is not already installed, follow the printer's plug-and-play instructions to install it from the provided CD-ROM.

**1** Connect the printer and computer using the USB cable.

Connect the USB cable firmly.

The [Found New Hardware] dialog box appears.

2 Click [Locate and install driver software (Recommended)].

If the [User Account Control] dialog box appears, click [Continue].

# Click [Don't search online].

A message prompting you to insert the provided CD-ROM appears.

- Insert the provided CD-ROM into the computer's CD-ROM drive.
- The printer driver search begins, and a list of printer drivers appears.

Select the printer driver you want to use, and then click [Next].

If the [Windows can't verify the publisher of this driver software] message appears, click [Install this driver software anyway].

# 6 Click [Close].

If the installation is successful, the icon of the printer connected to the "USB001" port appears in the **[Printers]** window.

### Note

- ☐ To disable Auto Run, press the **[Shift]** key when inserting the CD-ROM into the drive and keep it pressed until the computer finishes reading from the CD-ROM.
- ☐ The number after "USB" varies depending on the number of printers connected.
- ☐ The USB port is available only for the printer driver that is installed first. To install additional drivers for this printer, install them using other ports (such as LPT1). Then, after the installation, change the port settings to the specified USB port.

# **Troubleshooting USB**

Problem	Solutions
The printer is not recognized automatically.	Turn off the power of the printer, reconnect the USB cable, and then turn it on again.
Windows has already configured the USB settings.	Open Windows' Device Manager, and then, under [Universal Serial Bus controllers], remove any conflicting devices. Conflicting devices have a [!] or [?] icon by them. Take care not to accidentally remove required devices. For details, see Windows Help.  When using Windows 2000/XP/Vista or Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, an erroneous device is displayed under [USB Controller] in the [Device Manager] dialog box.
An error occurs during software installation.	First reboot Windows. Then, on the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel]. Double-click the System icon, and then on the [Hardware] tab, click [Device Manager]. Under [Other Devices], select the printer, and then open its properties dialog box. On the [General] tab, click [Reinstall Driver] to reinstall the driver.

#### Ш

# If a Message Appears during Installation

When a message that shows the number 58 or 34 appears during the installation, the printer driver cannot be installed using Auto Run. Use [Add Printer] or [Install Printer] to install the printer driver.

#### For Windows 2000

- 1 On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].
- **2** Double-click the Add Printer icon.
- **3** Follow the instructions in the Add Printer Wizard.

For Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2:

- 1 On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].
- 2 Click [Install Printer].
- **3** Follow the instructions in the Add Printer Wizard.

#### For Windows XP Home Editions:

- 1 On the [Start] menu, click [Control Panel].
- 2 Click [Printers and Other Hardware].
- Click [Printers and Faxes].
- 4 Click [Install Printer].
- **5** Follow the instructions in the Add Printer Wizard.

For Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008:

- 1 On the [Start] menu, click [Control Panel].
- 2 Click [Printer] in "Hardware and Sound".
- Click [Add a printer].
- **4** Follow the instructions in the Add Printer Wizard.

#### 1

# **Making Option Settings for the Printer**

Make option settings for the printer using the printer driver when bidirectional communication is disabled.

# 

For details about making option settings for the printer, see p.24 "If Bidirectional Communication Is Disabled".

## **Conditions for Bidirectional Communication**

Bidirectional communication allows information about paper settings to be automatically sent from the printer. You can check printer status from your computer.

• Bidirectional communication is supported by Windows 2000/XP/Vista, and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2/2008.

To support bidirectional communication, the following conditions must be met:

#### When connected with the network

The printer must be connected via standard TCP/IP port, and the default port name has not been changed.

[Enable bidirectional support] in the [Port] tab of the printer properties is selected.

#### When connected with USB

The printer must be connected to the computer's USB port using the USB interface cable.

[Enable bidirectional support] in the [Port] tab of the printer properties is selected.

# Note

- ☐ The PostScript 3 printer driver does not support bidirectional communication.
- ☐ The PCL printer drivers support bidirectional communication. You can update printer status manually.

## If Bidirectional Communication Is Disabled

Set up option settings when bidirectional communication is disabled.

# **∰**Important

- ☐ Manage Printers permission is required to change the printer properties in the **[Printers]** folder. Log on as an Administrators or Power Users group member.
- ☐ Make sure that **[Enable bidirectional support]** is selected on the **[Ports]** tab in the printer properties dialog box. Printing is possible only if this check box is selected.
- 1 On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].

The [Printers and Faxes] window appears.

When using Windows 2000/Vista and Windows Server 2008, click [Control Panel] on the [Start] menu, and then click [Printer]. The [Printer] window appears.

- 2 Click the icon of the printer you want to use.
- 3 On the [File] menu, click [Properties].
- 4 Click the [Accessories] tab.
- **5** Select options installed from the [Options] area.
- Click the [Paper Size Settings] tab.
- Select and highlight the tray to be used, select the appropriate size, and then click [Update].
- Click [OK] to close the printer properties dialog box.

# 2. Setting Up the Printer Driver

# **Accessing the Printer Properties**

This section explains about accessing the printer properties and make the printer settings.

The procedure explained in this chapter applies to both the PCL 6 and PostScript 3 printer drivers.

# Windows 2000 - Making Printer Settings

Making the printer default settings- the [Printer] window

# **#Important**

- ☐ To change the printer default settings including option configuration settings, log on using an account that has Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators and Power Users groups have Manage Printers permission by default.
- ☐ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the printer properties dialog box are applied to all users.
- 1 On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers]. The [Printers] window appears.
- 2 Click the icon of the printer you want to use.
- On the [File] menu, click [Properties].

The printer properties dialog box appears.

4 Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].

- Note
- ☐ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

#### Making the printer default settings - Printing Preferences

# **∰**Important

- ☐ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the printer properties dialog box are applied to all users.
- 1 On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].

The [Printers] window appears.

- **2** Click the icon of the printer you want to use.
- On the [File] menu, click [Printing Preferences...].

The [Printing Preferences] dialog box appears.

4 Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].

### **∅** Note

☐ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

# 

For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

#### Making printer settings from an application

You can make printer settings for a specific application.

To make printer settings for a specific application, open the **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box from that application. The following explains how to make settings for the WordPad application provided with Windows 2000.

1 On the [File] menu, click [Print...].

The [Print] dialog box appears.

- 2 Select the printer you want to use in the [Select Printer] list.
- Make the necessary settings, and then click [Apply] to start printing.

## Note

- ☐ The procedure to open the **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box may vary depending on the application. For details, see the manuals provided with the application you use.
- ☐ Any settings you make in the procedure above are valid for the current application only.
- ☐ General users can change the properties displayed in the **[Print]** dialog box of an application. Settings made here are used as defaults when printing from this application.

# 

For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

# Windows XP and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 - Making Printer Settings

#### Making the printer default settings - the [Printers and Faxes] window

## **#Important**

- ☐ To change the printer default settings including option configuration settings, log on using an account that has Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators and Power Users groups have Manage Printers permission by default.
- ☐ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the printer properties dialog box are applied to all users.
- 1 On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].

The [Printers and Faxes] window appears.

- **2** Click the icon of the printer you want to use.
- 3 On the [File] menu, click [Properties].

The printer properties dialog box appears.

- Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].
  - **∅** Note
  - ☐ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

#### Making the printer default settings - Printing Preferences

## **∰**Important

- ☐ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the printer properties dialog box are applied to all users.
- 1 On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].

The [Printers and Faxes] window appears.

- **2** Click the icon of the printer you want to use.
- On the [File] menu, click [Printing Preferences...].

The [Printing Preferences] dialog box appears.

4 Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].

#### **𝚱** Note

☐ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

## 

For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

#### Making printer settings from an application

You can make printer settings for a specific application.

To make printer settings for a specific application, open the **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box from that application. The following explains how to make settings for the WordPad application provided with Windows XP.

1 On the [File] menu, click [Print...].

The [Print] dialog box appears.

- 2 Select the printer you want to use in the [Select Printer] list, and then click [Preferences].
- Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK] to start printing.

## Note

- ☐ The procedure to open the **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box may vary depending on the application. For details, see the manuals provided with the application you use.
- ☐ Any settings you make in the procedure above are valid for the current application only.
- ☐ General users can change the properties displayed in the **[Print]** dialog box of an application. Settings made here are used as defaults when printing from this application.

## 

## Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008- Making Printer Settings

#### Making the printer default settings - the [Printer] window

## **∰**Important

- ☐ To change the printer default settings including option configuration settings, log on using an account that has Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators and Power Users groups have Manage Printers permission by default.
- ☐ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the printer properties dialog box are applied to all users.
- 1 On the [Start] menu, click [Control Panel].
  The [Control Panel] window appears.
- 2 Click [Printer] in "Hardware and Sound".
- Right-click the icon of the printer you want to use, and then click [Properties].

The printer properties dialog box appears.

- 4 Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].
  - **𝚱** Note
  - ☐ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

#### Making the printer default settings - Printing Preferences

## **∰**Important

- ☐ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the printer properties dialog box are applied to all users.
- 1 On the [Start] menu, click [Control Panel].

The [Control Panel] window appears.

- 2 Click [Printer] in "Hardware and Sound".
- Right-click the icon of the printer you want to use, and then click [Printing Preferences...].

The [Printing Preferences] dialog box appears.

4 Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].

#### Note

☐ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

## 

For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

#### Making printer settings from an application

You can make printer settings for a specific application.

To make printer settings for a specific application, open the **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box from that application. The following explains how to make settings for the WordPad application provided with Windows Vista.

1 On the [File] menu, click [Print...].

The [Print] dialog box appears.

- Select the printer you want to use in the [Select Printer] list, and then click [Preferences].
- 3 Make the necessary settings, and then click [Apply] to start printing.

## Note

- ☐ The procedure to open the **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box may vary depending on the application. For details, see the manuals provided with the application you use.
- ☐ Any settings you make in the procedure above are valid for the current application only.
- ☐ General users can change the properties displayed in the **[Print]** dialog box of an application. Settings made here are used as defaults when printing from this application.

## 

# 3. Other Print Operations

# If Errors Occur with the Specified Paper Size and Type

Use the form feed function to continue printing when a problem such as a paper size and paper type error occurred.

This function can be performed using the control panel.

#### **∰**Important

- ☐ You cannot use Smart Organizing Monitor to change paper tray settings to resolve errors such as a paper type or size mismatch in a queued print job. To resolve such errors, you must use Web Image Monitor to change the paper settings. Alternatively, perform form feed or reset the job.
- ☐ If the paper that is loaded is larger than the paper size specified in the printer driver, using the form feed function could result in a paper jam. Use form feed only if the paper is the same as or smaller than the paper size specified in the printer driver.

## $\mathcal{P}$ Reference

For details about Web Image Monitor, see p.37 "Using Web Image Monitor".

## **Performing Form Feed**

Follow the procedure below to perform form feed.

1 If the Smart Organizing Monitor dialog box with a caution message appears, press the [Stop/Start] key.

## **∅** Note

- ☐ If you want to print after adding paper to the tray, load the correct paper, and then press the [Stop/Start] key.
- ☐ If a tray with a smaller paper size is selected, the print job may be cut short, or other problems may occur.

## Canceling a Print Job

Follow the procedure below to cancel a print job that is related to the printer error occurred.

If the Smart Organizing Monitor dialog box appears with a caution message, press the [Job Reset] key.

# **Canceling a Print Job**

This section gives instruction to stop printing from the control panel or computer.

## **Canceling a Print Job Using the Control Panel**

You can cancel a print job using the control panel, if transferring print jobs is not completed.

1 Press the [Job Reset] key.

## **Canceling a Print Job from the Computer**

You can cancel a print job from the computer if the transferring print job is not completed.

1 Double-click the printer icon on the Windows task tray.

A window appears, showing all print jobs currently queued for printing. Check the current status of the job you want to cancel.

2 Select the name of the job you want to cancel, click the [Document] menu, and then click [Cancel].

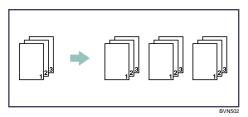
- **𝚱** Note
- ☐ You cannot stop printing data that has already been processed. For this reason, printing may continue for a few pages after you cancel printing.
- ☐ A print job containing a large volume of data may take considerable time to stop.

# Collate

Use the Collate function to print documents into page-ordered sets.

#### ❖ Collate

Output can be assembled as sets in sequential order.



## Note

- ☐ If Auto Continue occurs on the first set, the Collate will be canceled.
- ☐ If form feed occurs on the first set, the Collate will be canceled.

## 

For details about printing method, see the printer driver Help.

## Cover

Use the Cover function to insert cover sheets using paper in a specified tray.



☐ The cover sheet's size and orientation must be the same as those of the body paper.

## 

For details about printing methods, see the printer driver Help.

# Watermark

Use the Watermark function to print watermark text.



☐ If the watermark size is larger than the paper size, watermarks cannot be printed properly.

## 

# **Manual Duplex**

To print on both sides of paper using the Type 1 model, use the Manual Duplex function. Follow the procedure below to perform manual duplex printing.

In Manual Duplex printing, the printer prints only even pages of a document first, asks you to reload the output paper turned upside down into the printer, and then prints odd pages on the back sides of the paper.

## **#Important**

- ☐ This function is only available when printing from a computer running a Windows operating system using the PCL 6 printer driver.
- ☐ The printer always uses tray 1 to print on the back sides of paper, regardless of the tray you selected with the printer driver. Make sure that the paper settings of the trays that will be used match the paper settings of the print job to avoid paper mismatch errors.
- 1 Open the file you want to print on your computer.
- 2 Open the printer driver's properties.
- On the [Setup] tab, select [Open to Left], [Open to Right] or [Open to Top] from the [Duplex] list.
- Click [OK].
- Configure printing preferences according to your needs, and then click [OK] twice.

The Manual Duplex guidance screen appears on your computer showing the subsequent procedure, and the printer starts printing even pages.

6 Reload the output paper into tray 1 with the printed side up.

If paper orientation is portrait, put the top of paper towards you for **[Open to Left]** or **[Open to Right]**, or towards the printer rear for **[Open to Top]**.

If paper orientation is landscape, put the top of paper to the left for [Open to Left] or [Open to Right], or to the right for [Open to Top].

Press the [Stop/Start] key.

Odd pages will then be printed.

## Note

☐ When you print a document whose page count is an odd number, a blank page is printed first. This blank page is the last page of the document. When you start printing on the other side of the paper, include this blank page in the bundle of paper.

#### 

For details about loading paper in the trays, see Hardware Guide.

For details about printer driver operation, see the printer driver Help.

# 4. Monitoring and Configuring the Printer

You can check the printer's status or change its settings by accessing the printer directly using Web Image Monitor.

# **Using Web Image Monitor**

#### Available operations

The following operations can be performed remotely using Web Image Monitor on a computer:

- Displaying the printer's status or settings
- Configuring the printer's settings
- Printing reports
- Configuring network settings
- Setting a password for changing the printer's configuration
- Restoring the default values for the printer's configuration
- Creating backup files of the printer's configuration
- Restoring the printer's configuration from backup files
- Displaying the counter information
- Making settings for paper loaded into each input tray
- Making input tray settings

#### Supported Web browsers

- Windows: Internet Explorer 5.0 or higher
- Mac OS X: Safari

#### Note

- ☐ If you use an older version of a supported Web browser or the Web browser has JavaScript and cookies disabled, display and operation problems may occur.
- ☐ If you are using a proxy server, configure the Web browser settings as necessary. For details about the settings, contact your network administrator.
- ☐ The previous page may not appear even if the back button of the Web browser is clicked. If this happens, click the refresh button of the Web browser.
- ☐ Displayed information is not automatically refreshed. Click the [Refresh] button in the upper right-hand corner.
- ☐ We recommend using Web Image Monitor in the same network.
- ☐ If the printer is firewall-protected, it cannot be accessed from computers outside the firewall.
- ☐ When using the printer under DHCP, the IPv4 address may be automatically changed by the DHCP server settings.
- ☐ If the HTTP port is disabled, connection to the printer using the printer's URL cannot be established.
- ☐ To use JAWS 7.0 under Web Image Monitor, you must be running Windows OS and Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 SP2, or a later version.

## **Displaying Top Page**

This section explains how to display Web Image Monitor and its Top Page.

#### **Displaying Top Page of Web Image Monitor**

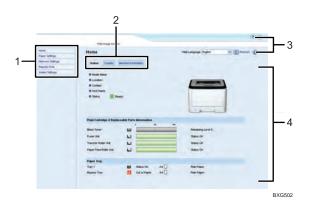
- **1** Start your Web browser.
- **2** Enter "http://(printer's address)/" in the address bar of the Web browser.

Top Page of Web Image Monitor appears.

If the printer's host name has been registered on the DNS server, you can enter it.

#### **Top Page**

Every Web Image Monitor page is divided into the following areas:



#### 1. Menu area

When you select [Network Settings], content of the [Network Settings] page appears on the main area.

#### 2. Tab area

Contains menus for the Status and Counter modes and tabs for switching between them.

#### 3. Help

Use Help to view help file contents.

#### 4. Main area

Displays the contents of the item selected in the menu area.

The printer information in the main area is not automatically updated. Click [Refresh] at the upper right in the main area to update the printer information. Click the Web browser's [Refresh] button to refresh the entire browser screen.

## **Changing the Interface Language**

Select the desired interface language from the [Web Language] list.

## **Checking the System Information**

Click **[Home]** to display the main page of Web Image Monitor. You can check the current system information on this page.

This page contains three tabs: [Status], [Counter], and [Machine Information].

#### **Checking the Status Information**

Click the **[Status]** tab on the main page to display system information, paper tray status and toner levels.



Item	Description
Model Name	Shows the name of the printer.
Location	Shows the location of the printer as registered on the <b>[SNMP]</b> page.
Contact	Shows the contact information of the printer as registered on the <b>[SNMP]</b> page.
Host Name	Shows the host name specified in [Host Name] on the [DNS] page.
Status	Shows the current messages on the printer's display.

#### Print Cartridge & Replaceable Parts Information

Item	Description
Black Toner	Shows the amount of black toner remaining.
Fuser Unit	Shows the remaining life of the fuser unit.
Transfer Roller Unit	Shows the remaining life of the transfer roller unit.
Paper Feed Roller Unit	Shows the remaining life of the paper feed roller unit.

#### ❖ Paper Tray

Item	Description
Tray 1	Shows the current state and paper size/type setting of tray 1.
Tray 2	Shows the current state and paper size/type setting of tray 2.
Bypass Tray	Shows the current state and paper size/type setting of the bypass tray.

#### Note

- ☐ The information about tray 2 appears only when it is installed.
- ☐ If a non-genuine print cartridge is installed, toner life cannot be reliably indicated.

#### 

For details about location and contact information, see p.49 "Configuring the SNMP Settings".

#### **Checking the Counter Information**

Click the **[Counter]** tab on the main page to check the counter information.



#### Printer Counter

Item	Description
Page Total	Shows the total number of pages printed using the printer driver, lists/reports printed from the [Reports Print] menu.

#### ❖ Duplex

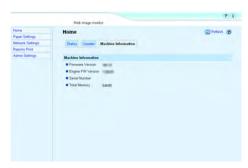
Item	Description
Duplex Total Page	Shows the total number of pages printed on both sides.

## Ø Note

- ☐ Duplex counter appears for the Type 2 model only.
- $\square$  A sheet printed on both sides counts as two printed pages.

## **Checking the Machine Information**

Click the [Machine Information] tab on the main page to display the printer information.



#### **❖** Machine Information

Item	Description
Firmware Version	Shows the version of the firmware installed on the printer.
Engine FW Version	Shows the version of the firmware for the printer engine.
Serial Number	Shows the serial number of the printer.
Total Memory	Shows the total memory installed on the printer.

# **Configuring the Paper Settings**

Click [Paper Settings] to display the page for configuring the printer settings.



#### ❖ Tray 1

Item	Description
Paper Size	Select the paper size for tray 1 from the following:
	A4, B5 JIS, A5, B6-S, A6, Legal, Letter, Half Letter-S, Executive, 8 x 13, 8.5 x 13, Folio, 16K, Custom.
Paper Type	Select the paper type for tray 1 from the following:
	Thin Paper(52-64g/m²), Thick Paper 1(100-130g/m²), Thick Paper 2(131-162g/m²), Plain Paper, Recycled, Color, Preprinted, Prepunched, Letterhead, Bond Paper, Cardstock, Label Paper.

## ❖ Tray 2

Item	Description
Paper Size	Select the paper size for tray 2 from the following: A4, B5 JIS, A5, Legal, Letter, Half Letter-S.
Paper Type	Select the paper type for tray 2 from the following: Thin Paper(52-64g/m²), Thick Paper 1(100- 130 g/m²), Plain Paper, Recycled, Color, Preprinted, Prepunched, Letterhead.

## ❖ Bypass Tray

Item	Description
Paper Size	Select the paper size for the bypass tray from the following:
	A4, B5 JIS, A5, B6-S, A6, Legal, Letter, Half Letter-S, Executive, 16K, Com 10, Monarch, C5 Env, C6 Env, DL Env, Custom.
Paper Type	Select the paper type for the bypass tray from the following:
	Thin Paper(52-64g/m²), Thick Paper 1(100-130g/m²), Thick Paper 2(131-162g/m²), Plain Paper, Recycled, Color, Preprinted, Prepunched, Letterhead, Bond Paper, Cardstock, Label Paper, Envelope, OHP.

## ❖ Tray Priority

Item	Description
Tray Priority	Select the tray that the printer checks first for paper that matches the print job from tray 1, tray 2, or bypass tray.

## **∅** Note

 $\hfill \square$  The information about tray 2 appears only when it is installed.

# **Configuring the Network Settings**

Click [Network Settings] to display the page for configuring the network settings. This page contains six tabs: [Network Status], [Network Application], [DNS], [Alert Messages], [SNMP], and [SMTP].

#### **Checking the Network Status**

Click the **[Network Status]** tab on the network settings page to display the network information.



#### ❖ General Status

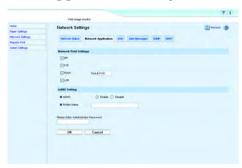
Item	Description
Link Status	Shows the type and speed of the network connection.
IPP Printer Name	Shows the name used to identify the printer on the network.
Network Version	Shows the version of the printer's network module (a part of the printer firmware).
MAC Address	Shows the MAC address of the printer.

#### ❖ TCP/IP Status

Item	Description
DHCP	Select whether the printer should receive a dynamic IP address automatically using DHCP. To use DHCP, select <b>[Enable]</b> . When enabled, the items below cannot be configured.
IP Address	Enter the IP address for the printer.
Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask of the network.
Gateway	Enter the IP address of the network gateway.

## **Configuring the Network Application Settings**

Click the **[Network Application]** tab on the network settings page to configure the network application settings.



#### **❖** Network Print Settings

Item	Description
IPP	Select to enable network printing using Internet Print Protocol (via TCP port 631/80).
FTP	Select to enable network printing using an embedded FTP server in the printer (via TCP port 20/21).
RAW	Select to enable network raw printing.
Port #	Enter the TCP port number to use for raw printing. The valid range is 1024 to 65535, except 53550 (default is 9100).
LPR	Select to enable network printing using LPR/LPD (via TCP port 515).

## mDNS Setting

Item	Description
mDNS	Select to enable Multicast DNS (via UDP port 5353). If disabled, the item below cannot be configured.
Printer Name	Enter the name of the printer. Can contain up to 32 characters.

## **Configuring the DNS Settings**

Click the **[DNS]** tab on the network settings page to configure the DNS settings.

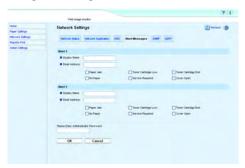


## DNS Settings

Item	Description
DNS Method	Select whether to specify domain name servers manually or receive DNS information from the network automatically. When set to [Auto], the items below become unavailable.
Primary DNS Server	Enter the IP address of the primary DNS.
Secondary DNS Server	Enter the IP address of the secondary DNS.
Domain Name	Enter the domain name for the printer. Can contain up to 32 characters.
DNS Timeout [Seconds]	Enter the number of seconds the printer waits before considering a DNS request to have timed out (5 to 100).
Host Name	Enter a host name for the printer. Can contain up to 15 characters.

## **Configuring the Alert Message Settings**

Click the **[Alert Messages]** tab on the network settings page to configure the alert message settings.



#### ❖ Alert 1/Alert 2

Item	Description
Display Name	Enter a sender name for alert e-mail. Can contain up to 32 characters.
Email Address	Enter the address of the recipient of the alert e-mail. Can contain up to 64 characters.
Paper Jam	Select to send an alert e-mail to the specified address if a paper jam occurs.
No Paper	Select to send an alert e-mail to the specified address if paper runs out.
Toner Cartridge Low	Select to send an alert e-mail to the specified address if toner becomes low.
Service Required	Select to send an alert e-mail to the specified address if the printer requires servicing.
Toner Cartridge End	Select to send an alert e-mail to the specified address if toner runs out.
Cover Open	Select to send an alert e-mail to the specified address if a cover is open.

## **Configuring the SNMP Settings**

Click the **[SNMP]** tab on the network settings page to configure the SNMP settings.



## **❖** SNMP Setting

Item	Description
SNMP	Select whether to enable the printer to use SNMP services.

## ❖ Trap

Item	Description
Target Trap	Select whether to enable the printer to send traps to the management host (NMS).
SNMP Management Host 1	Enter the IP address or host name of a management host. Can contain up to 32 characters.
SNMP Management Host 2	Enter the IP address or host name of a management host. Can contain up to 32 characters.

## **❖** Community

Item	Description
Get Community	Enter the community name to use for authentication of Get requests. Can contain up to 32 characters.  To search for this printer in Smart Organizing Monitor, specify "public".
Trap Community	Enter the community name to use for authentication of Trap requests. Can contain up to 32 characters.

## ❖ System

Item	Description
Location	Enter the location of the printer. The location entered here is displayed on the main page. Can contain up to 64 characters.
Contact	Enter the contact information of the printer. The contact information entered here is displayed on the main page. Can contain up to 64 characters.

## **Configuring the SMTP Settings**

Click the **[SMTP]** tab on the network settings page to configure the SMTP settings.



## ❖ SMTP Settings

Item	Description
Primary SMTP/POP3 Server	Enter the IP address or host name of the SMTP/POP3 server. Can contain up to 32 characters.
Port Number	Enter the port number for SMTP (1 to 65535).
Authentication Method	Select an authentication method from the following:
	[Anonymous]: The user name and password are not necessary.
	[SMTP Authentication]: The printer supports NTLM and LOGIN authentication.
	<b>[POP before SMTP]</b> : The POP3 server is used for authentication. The same server as the SMTP server is used as the POP3 server.
User Name	Enter the user name for logging in to the SMTP server. Can contain up to 32 characters.
Password	Enter the password for logging in to the SMTP server. Can contain up to 32 characters.
System Admin E-mail	Enter the system administrator's e-mail address. This address is used as the sender's address of e-mail messages sent from this printer, such as alert e-mail messages and Scan to E-mail notifications. Can contain up to 64 characters.
Timeout [Seconds]	Enter the number of seconds the printer waits before considering an SMTP operation to have timed out (1 to 999).

## **Printing Reports**

Click [Reports Print] to display the page for printing reports. Then, select an item and click [Print] to print out information for that item.



#### **❖** Reports Print

Item	Description
Configuration Page	Prints general information about the printer and its current configuration.
PCL Font List	The installed PCL font list is printed.
PS Font List	The installed PS font list is printed.

#### Note

☐ Reports cannot be printed via Web Image Monitor if other jobs are being printed. Before printing reports, confirm that printer is not printing.

## **Configuring the Administrator Settings**

Click [Admin Settings] to display the page for configuring the administrator settings. This page contains five tabs: [Password], [Default Settings], [Backup Settings], [Restore Settings], and [Help Source File Setting].

#### **Configuring the Password**

Click the [Password] tab on the administrator settings page to configure the password.



#### Administrator Password

Item	Description
New Password	Enter the new administrator password. Can contain up to 16 characters.
Confirm New Password	Enter the same password again, to confirm.

#### **Restoring the Default Settings**

Click the **[Default Settings]** tab on the administrator settings page to restore the printer's default settings.



Item	Description
Clear Network Settings	Select to restore the network settings to their defaults.
Clear Menu Settings	Select to restore the menu settings to their defaults.

#### **Backing Up the Printer's Settings**

Click the **[Backup Settings]** tab on the administrator settings page to create backup files containing the printer's configuration settings. If necessary, these backup files can be used to restore previous configurations.

## **∰**Important

☐ When sending the printer for repair, it is important that you create backup files in advance. The printer's settings are returned to the default after repair.



#### ❖ Backup Settings

Item	Description
Network Settings Backup	Backs up settings configured on the [Network Status], [Network Application], [DNS], [Alert Messages], [SNMP], and [SMTP] pages, as well as the administrator password for Web Image Monitor.
Menu Settings Backup	Backs up the menu settings that are not related to the network.

Follow the procedure below to create configuration backup files.

- 1 Select the radio button for the type of data you wish to back up.
- 2 Enter the administrator password if required.
- Click [OK].
- 4 Click [Save] in the confirmation dialog box.
- **5** Navigate to the location to save the backup file.
- **6** Specify a name for the file, and click [Save].

#### Restoring the Printer's Settings from a Backup File

Click the **[Restore Settings]** tab on the administrator settings page to restore the printer's settings from a previously created backup file.

## **∰**Important

☐ When the printer is returned from repair, it is important that you restore the printer's settings from the backup files. The printer's settings are returned to the default after repair.



#### Restore Settings

Item	Description
Select file to restore	Enter the file path and name of the file to restore, or click <b>[Browse]</b> to select the file.

Follow the procedure below to restore configuration backup files.

- 1 Click [Browse...].
- 2 Navigate to the directory containing the backup file to restore.
- 3 Select the backup file, and click [Open].
- 4 Enter the administrator password if required.
- Click [OK].
  - Note
  - ☐ If the setting are not restored successfully, an error message appears. Try again to restore the file completely.

#### **Help Source File Setting**

Click the **[Help Source File Setting]** tab on the administrator settings page to configure the help source file setting.



#### ❖ Help Source File Setting

Item	Description
Help Source File	Enter the help source file path.

#### Installing Help

- Copy the [WIMHELP] folder on the CD-ROM to your computer's hard drive. The example procedures explain how to copy the [WIMHELP] folder to the C:\tmp\WIMHELP directory.
- Access Web Image Monitor, and then click [Help Source File Setting] on the [Admin Settings] page.
- In the text box, enter "C:\tmp\WIMHELP\".
- **4** Enter the administrator password if required.
- Click [OK].

## **Displaying Web Image Monitor Help**

To use Help for the first time, you need to install its source file from the CD-ROM provided with this printer.

#### Note

- ☐ By clicking **[Help]** in the header area, the contents of Help appear.
- ☐ By clicking "?", the Help icon in the main area, Help for the setting items in the main area appears.

# **Using Smart Organizing Monitor**

Smart Organizing Monitor allows you to make printer settings, such as input tray and network-related settings, from your client computer.

You can also use Smart Organizing Monitor to check printer status.

The following operations are possible with Smart Organizing Monitor:

- Displaying the printer status or settings
- Checking the locations where errors have occurred and the error recovery methods
- Displaying the printer status and the supply information
- Printing a list of the printer configurations
- Specifying the printer's IP address
- Making the settings for paper loaded into each input tray
- Making the input tray settings
- Changing the factory-set default settings
- Making the system, access code and language settings
- Making the network protocol settings
- Making the printer settings

#### 

The Smart Organizing Monitor functions you can use under Windows operating systems are also available under Mac OS. For details, see p.89 "Using Smart Organizing Monitor".

## **Installing Smart Organizing Monitor**

## **∰**Important

☐ To install Smart Organizing Monitor, log on as an Administrators group member.

Smart Organizing Monitor is automatically installed with the PCL 6 printer driver when installing it, or by clicking **[Smart Organizing Monitor]** in the **[Printer Drivers and Utilities]** dialog box, which appears when inserting the CD-ROM provided with this printer.

## **Displaying the Smart Organizing Monitor Dialog Box**

Methods of displaying the Smart Organizing Monitor dialog box differ depending on how it was installed.

If you installed Smart Organizing Monitor by clicking [Smart Organizing Monitor] in the [Printer Drivers and Utilities] dialog box:

On the [Start] menu, point to [Programs] or [All Programs], and then point to [Smart Organizing Monitor for SP 3400 Series] > [Smart Organizing Monitor for SP 3400 Series Status].

❖ If you installed Smart Organizing Monitor with the printer driver: In the printing preferences dialog box, click [Smart Organizing Monitor...]. Or, [Accessories], [Advanced Options] or [Paper Size Settings] tab in the printer's properties dialog box, click [Smart Organizing Monitor...].

## **Displaying the Printer Status**

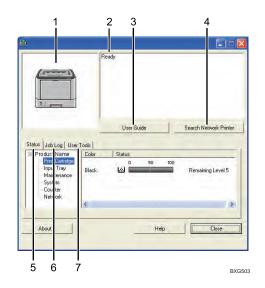
In the Smart Organizing Monitor dialog box, you can check the status of monitored printers.

The printer status is displayed using graphics and comments.

#### Note

☐ If Smart Organizing Monitor is monitoring multiple printers, the [Printer Driver Selection] dialog box appears. Select the printer driver used by the target printer, and then click [OK]. To check the status of a network printer, click [Search Network Printer].





#### 1. Printer graphic

If an input tray error occurs, appears. This identifies the tray where the error occurred. The problem tray is outlined in red.

#### 2. Comments

Displays current printer status and instructions for resolving problems.

#### 3. [User Guide] button

Click to display error related Help.

To use this function, install the manual from the CD-ROM. For the manual installation procedure, see Hardware Guide.

#### 4. [Search Network Printer] button

Click to select a network printer.

#### 5. [Status] tab

Displays the status of the items such as toner levels and paper level.

#### 6. [Job Log] tab

Displays the information related to print jobs.

#### 7. [User Tools] tab

Prints the Configuration Page, PCL Configuration/Font Page, and PS Configuration/Font Page. The [Printer Configuration] dialog box can be opened from this tab.

## **Displaying the Printer Information**

The lower half of the Smart Organizing Monitor dialog box contains the following three tabs: [Status], [Job Log], and [User Tools]. You can use these tabs to display information about a monitored printer, such as its status, job history, and configuration.

#### Displaying the printer status

The left side of the **[Status]** tab shows the printer name and tree. Click an item in the tree to display information relating to it.

#### ❖ Print Cartridge

Displays the following messages to indicate remaining toner levels: Remaining Level 1 to 5, "Almost Empty" and "Empty".

Graphics also indicate remaining toner levels.

#### Input Tray

You can check the following information about the input trays.

- Input Tray
   Displays the installed input trays.
- Status
  Displays the input tray status, "Out of Paper" or "Status OK".
- Paper Size
   Displays the size of the paper loaded into each input tray.
- Paper Type
  Displays the type of the paper loaded into each input tray.

#### ❖ Maintenance

Displays the name of consumables and uses graphics to indicate their statuses.

#### System

Displays the system information about the printer, such as the model name, system version, and memory size.

#### Counter

Displays information about the counters.

#### ❖ Network

Displays network details such as the printer's IP address and network-related comments.

#### 

For details about each item in the Smart Organizing Monitor dialog box, see Smart Organizing Monitor Help.

You can print information that appears on the **[Status]** tab. For details see p.61 "Printing the printer configurations".

#### Displaying the job history

On the [Job Log] tab, print jobs are displayed in the list.

You can check the following information:

- File Name
- Page(s)
- Start Date
- Status

#### Note

□ Normally, the names used to log on to Windows are displayed in the [User Name] column.

#### Printing the printer configurations

On the **[User Tools]** tab, you can print lists of printer information.

## **∰**Important

- ☐ You can print the configuration page only when the printer is not busy processing jobs.
- ☐ To print information about the printer, the printer must be monitored from Smart Organizing Monitor via a supported printer driver.

In the **[List/Test Print]** list, select the item you want to print. You can print the following:

## Configuration Page

The current configurations and general information of the printer are printed.

## ❖ PCL Config./Font Page

The installed PCL font list is printed.

## ❖ PS Config./Font Page

The installed PS font list is printed.

The procedure for printing the configuration page is described as an example.

On the [User Tools] tab, in the [List/Test Print] list, select [Configuration Page].

# 2 Click [Print].

#### 

For details about the items displayed on the configuration page, see p.69 "Reading the Configuration Page".

## **Printer Configuration**

You can use the [Printer Configuration] dialog box to change the current printer settings. To display the [Printer Configuration] dialog box and change printer settings, on the [User Tools] tab, click [Printer Configuration].

#### **#Important**

☐ The [Printer Configuration] is disabled when the printer is not in the ready state or power save mode.

You can use the [Printer Configuration] dialog box to change the settings of:

- Paper Input
- Maintenance
- System
- Network
- Printer

#### Note

☐ [Printer Configuration] can be used only when there are no print jobs waiting to be processed on this printer.

## 

For details about each item you can specify in the **[Printer Configuration]** dialog box, see Smart Organizing Monitor Help.

#### About menu and mode

There are two modes you can use to access the **[Printer Configuration]** dialog box: administrator mode and general users mode.

Available tabs in the **[Printer Configuration]** dialog box differ depending on the mode you are in.

#### Administrator

In the **[Access Code]** dialog box, enter an access code. All tabs in the **[Printer Configuration]** dialog box are available.

#### General users

Only the [Paper Input] tab is available.

#### Changing the paper settings

On the [Paper Input] tab, you can change paper size and other paper settings.

#### ❖ Tray 1

• Paper Size

The following sizes are available:

A4 (210 x 297 mm), B5 JIS (182 x 257 mm), A5 (148 x 210 mm), B6 JIS (128 x 182 mm), A6 (105 x 148 mm), 8 1/2 x 14, 8 1/2 x 11, 5 1/2 x 8 1/2, 7 1/4 x 10 1/2, 8 x 13, 8 1/2 x 13, 8 1/4 x 13, 16K, Custom Paper Size

Paper Type

The following paper types are available:

Thin Paper, Thick Paper 1, Thick Paper 2, Plain Paper 1, Recycled Paper, Color Paper, Preprinted Paper, Prepunched Paper, Letterhead, Bond Paper, Cardstock, Labels

• Custom Paper Size

You can make the custom paper size settings, when **[Custom Paper Size]** is selected.

- Unit: Specify the unit of measurement in "mm" or "inch".
- Horizontal: Specify the horizontal width between 100 and 216 mm (3.94 and 8.50 inch).
- Vertical: Specify the vertical length between 148 and 356 mm (5.83 and 14.02 inch).

# ❖ Tray 2

Paper Size

You can specify the paper size for tray 2.

The following sizes are available:

A4 (210 x 297 mm), B5 JIS(182 x 257 mm), A5(148 x 210 mm), 8 1/2 x 14, 8 1/2 x 11, 5 1/2 x 8 1/2

Paper Type

You can specify the paper type for tray 2.

The following paper types are available:

Thin Paper, Thick Paper 1, Plain Paper 1, Recycled Paper, Color Paper, Preprinted Paper, Prepunched Paper, Letterhead

#### **❖** Tray Priority

Select the priority tray from the **[Default Tray:]** list, when the optional paper feed unit is attached to the printer.

#### ❖ Bypass Tray

• Paper Size

The following sizes are available: A4 (210 x 297 mm), B5 JIS (182 x 257 mm), A5 (148 x 210 mm), B6 JIS (128 x 182 mm), A6 (105 x 148 mm), 8 1/2 x 14, 8 1/2 x 11, 5 1/2 x 8 1/2, 7 1/4 x 10 1/2, 16K, 4 1/8 x 9 1/2, 3 7/8 x 7 1/2, C5 Env, C6 Env, DL Env, Custom Paper Size

#### • Paper Type

The following paper types are available: Thin Paper, Thick Paper 1, Thick Paper 2, Plain Paper 1, Recycled Paper, Color Paper, Preprinted Paper, Prepunched Paper, Letterhead, Bond Paper, Cardstock, Labels, Envelope, OHP

#### • Custom Paper Size

You can make the custom paper size settings, when **[Custom Paper Size]** is selected.

- Unit:
  - Specify the unit of measurement in "mm" or "inch".
- Horizontal:

Specify the horizontal width between 90 and 216 mm (3.54 and 8.50 inch).

• Vertical:

Specify the vertical length between 140 and 356 mm (5.51 and 14.02 inch).

## Note

- $\Box$  The paper settings are not available for the bypass tray.
- ☐ Tray 2 is available only when the optional paper feed unit is attached to the printer.

# **Adjusting registrations**

On the [Maintenance] tab, you can adjust print starting positions.

Normally, you do not have to adjust registrations. However, adjustments could be useful in some cases, especially when you want to print in a specific position. Under [Registration: Tray 1], [Registration: Tray 2], [Registration: Bypass Tray], and [Registration: Duplex Tray] you can adjust the print image position printed on the sheet fed from each tray. To check the adjustment result, use [Print Test Sheet].

#### **Setting basic functions**

On the **[System]** tab, you can set basic functions required to use the printer. The printer can be used on factory-set defaults, but the configuration can be changed depending on the condition of the user. The changed condition holds even if the printer is turned off.

The access code can be changed on this tab.

#### Making network-related settings

On the [Network 1], [Network 2] and [Network 3] tabs, you can set configurations about network connection and communication.

The following operations are possible on these tabs:

- Checking the printer name, active protocol, and other printer information
- Making interface settings, including the timeout setting and protocol settings
- Checking or making TCP/IP settings
- Checking or making SMTP settings
- Checking or making SNMP and Alert settings

#### Settings conditions for printing

On the [Printer] tab, you can set conditions for printing.

In the **[PCL]** area, you can specify the conditions such as Orientation and font settings.

# **Printer Status Notification by E-Mail**

Whenever a toner cartridge becomes empty or paper is jammed, an e-mail alert is issued to the registered addresses to notify the printer status.

# **#Important**

- ☐ This function is available only if you are using this printer in a network environment.
- ☐ Depending on your e-mail application, a phishing warning might appear after you receive an e-mail message. To prevent phishing warnings appearing after you receive e-mail from a specified sender, you must add the sender to your e-mail application's exclusion list. For details about how to do this, refer to your e-mail application's Help.

For this notification, you can make the e-mail notification settings.

You can be notified of the following events:

- Paper Jam
- Print Cartridge Empty
- Service Required
- Print Cartridge Near Empty
- No Paper
- Cover Open

Also you can see the information of the printer, such as printer name, serial number and total counter.

Open a Web browser, and then enter "http://(printer's address)/" in the address bar.

Top Page of Web Image Monitor appears.

- 2 In the menu area, click [Network Settings].
- Click the [Alert Messages] tab.
- In [Display Name], enter the sender's name to be used in the automatic notification e-mail.
- In the [Email Address] box, enter the recipient's e-mail address.
- 6 Select the types of errors that you want the recipient to be notified of.
- **2** Enter the administrator password if required.
- 8 Click [OK].

# **Mail Authentication**

You can configure mail authentication to prevent illegal use of the mail server.

When an e-mail is sent to the SMTP server, authentication is performed using the SMTP AUTH protocol by prompting the mail originator to enter the user name and password.

Follow the procedure below to specify SMTP authentication.

- 1 In the menu area, click [Network Settings].
- 2 Click [SMTP] in the [Network Settings] page.
- **3** Make the following settings:
  - SMTP Authentication: Select [SMTP Authentication] or [POP Before SMTP].
  - User Name: Enter the user name for SMTP Authentication.
  - Password: Enter the password set for the SMTP User Name.
  - System Admin E-mail: Enter the e-mail address.
- **4** Enter the administrator password if required.
- Click [OK].
- **6** Quit Web Image Monitor.

# **SNMP**

You can use the SNMP manager to obtain information about the printer.

The SNMP agent operating on UDP is built into the Ethernet board that is installed in this printer.

# **#Important**

☐ If you change the printer's community name, use Web Image Monitor or Smart Organizing Monitor to change the computer's settings accordingly.

# Note

- ☐ The default community name is "public". You can use this community name to obtain MIB information.
- ☐ To search for this printer in Smart Organizing Monitor, specify "public" in **[Get Community:]**.

# Reading the Configuration Page

Settings made in the [Printer Configuration] dialog box are printed.

#### Product Name

Displays the product name.

#### **❖** System Reference

Displays the following information about the printer.

- Printer ID
- Total Memory
- Firmware Version
- Printer Language
- Option installation status
- Print Cartridge
- Transfer Roller
- Paper Feed Roller
- Fuser Unit

#### Paper Input

Displays the paper size and type settings.

- Tray Priority
- Bypass Tray
- Tray 1
- Tray 2

#### Maintenance

Displays the settings made under the [Maintenance] menu.

- Registration
- Horiz: Tray 1
- Vert: Tray 1
- Horiz: Tray 2
- Vert: Tray 2
- Horiz: Bypass Tray
- Vert: Bypass Tray
- Horiz: Duplex (Type 2 model only)
- Vert: Duplex (Type 2 model only)

#### ❖ System

Displays the settings made under the [System] menu.

- Auto Continue
- Copies
- Sub Paper Size
- Duplex
- Blank Page Print
- Energy Saver Mode 1
- Energy Saver Mode 2
- Energy Saver Timer
- Default Paper Size
- Print Error Page
- Notification by E-mail
- Low Humidity Mode

#### ❖ PCL Menu

Displays settings made under [Printer] tab in [Printer Configuration] dialog box.

- Orientation
- Form Lines
- Font Number
- Point Size
- Font Pitch
- Symbol Set
- Courier Font
- Ext. A4 Width
- Append CR To LF
- Resolution

#### ❖ PS Menu

Displays settings made under [Printer] tab in [Printer Configuration] dialog box.

Resolution

#### Host Interface

- USB Timeout
- Network Timeout
- DHCP
- IP Address
- Subnet Mask
- Gateway Address
- Ethernet
- USB Setting
- Fixed USB Port

#### Interface Information

- MAC Address
- Host Name

#### Counter List

- Total Counter
- Duplex Counter (Type 2 model only)

#### ❖ Jam Counter

- Total Counter
- Duplex Jam (Type 2 model only)
- Outer Jam
- Inner Jam
- Tray 1 Paper Misfeed
- Tray 2 Paper Misfeed
- Bypass Tray Paper Misfeed

### ❖ Error Log

Displays the error logs.

# Note

☐ The printed items and the contents might be different depending how it was printed.

# Reference

For details about printing printer configuration using Web Image Monitor, see p.52 "Printing Reports".

For details about printing printer configuration using Smart Organizing Monitor, see p.92 "Printer Configuration".

# 5. Using a Print Server

# **Preparing Print Server**

This section explains how to configure this printer as a Windows network printer. The printer is configured to enabling network clients to use it.

# **#Important**

- ☐ Under Windows XP Professional or Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, to change printer properties in the [Printer] folder, you need Printer Management access authentication; under Windows Vista or Windows Server 2008, Full Control access authentication. Log on to the file server as an Administrator group.
- 1 Open the [Printers and Faxes] window from the [Start] menu.

The [Printers and Faxes] window appears.

Under Windows 2000/Vista or Windows Server 2008, the **[Printers]** window appears.

- 2 Click the icon of this printer. On the [File] menu, click [Properties]. The printer properties appears.
- 3 On the [Sharing] tab, click [Share this Printer].
- To share this printer with users using a different version of Windows, click [Additional Drivers...].

If you have installed an alternative driver by selecting [Share this Printer] during the printer driver installation, this step can be ignored.

- On the [Advanced] tab, click the [Printing Defaults...] button. Specify the default values for the printer driver that will be distributed to client computers, and then click [OK].
- Click [OK], and then close the printer properties.

# Special Operations under Windows

# **Printing Files Directly from Windows**

You can print files directly using Windows commands. For example, you can print PS files for PS3.

You can print files directly using "lpr" or "ftp" command.

# Setup

Follow the procedure below to make network environment settings.

- Enable TCP/IP using Smart Organizing Monitor, and then set up the printer's network environment about TCP/IP including IP addresses.
  - TCP/IP of the printer is set as default.
- 2 Install a TCP/IP in Windows to set up the network environment.

  Consult the network administrator for the local setting information.
- To print under Windows 2000/XP/Vista or Windows Server 2003/2003 R2/2008, install "Printing service for UNIX" as the network application.
  - **₽** Reference

For details about setting the IPv4 address of the printer using DHCP, see p.99 "Using DHCP".

# **Printing Commands**

The following explains printing operations using the lpr commands.

Enter commands using the command prompt window. The location of the command prompt varies depending on operating systems:

- Windows 2000
  - [Start] [Programs] [Accessories] [Command Prompt]
- Windows XP/Vista, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2/2008
   [Start] [All Programs] [Accessories] [Command Prompt]
- Note
- ☐ Match the data format of the file to be printed with the emulation mode of this printer.
- ☐ If the message "print requests full" appears, no print jobs can be accepted. Try again when sessions end. For each command, the amount of possible sessions is indicated as follows:
  - lpr: 10
  - ftp: 3
- ☐ Enter the file name in a format including the path from the directory executing commands.

# 

The "option" specified in a command is an intrinsic printer option and its syntax is similar to printing from UNIX.

## lpr

When specifying a printer by IP address

c:\>lpr -S [printer's IP address] -P [Option] -o l
\path\file name

When specifying a printer by host name instead of IP address

c:\>lpr -S [printer host name] -P [Option] -o l \path\file
name

To print a binary file, include the "-o l" switch (a dash followed by a lowercase O and L) after the printer name.

#### ftp

Use the "put" or "mput" command according to the number of files to be printed.

When one file is printed

```
ftp> put \path\file name [option]
```

When multiple files are printed

```
ftp> mput \path\file name [\path\file name...] [option]
```

- 1 Formulate the printer's IP address or the host name of the hosts file printer as an argument and use the "ftp" command.
  - % ftp printer's IP address
- 2 Enter the user name and password, and then press the [Enter] key.

For details about the user name and password, consult your network administrator.

User:

Password:

**3** When printing a binary file, set the file mode to binary.

ftp> bin

When printing a binary file in ASCII mode, print may not come out correctly.

4 Specify files to be printed.

The following shows the examples of printing a PostScript 3 file named "file 1" in the "C:\PRINT" directory and printing file 1 and file 2.

```
ftp> put C:\PRINT\file1 filetype=RPS
ftp> mput C:\PRINT\file1 C:\PRINT\file2
```

**U**Quit ftp.

ftp> bye



- ☐ "=", ",", "\_", and ";"cannot be used for file names. File names will be read as option strings.
- ☐ For "mput" command, option cannot be defined.
- $\hfill\Box$  For "mput" command, "\*" and "?" can be used as wild cards in file names.
- ☐ When printing a binary file in ASCII mode, print may not come out correctly.

# 7. Mac OS X Configuration

This chapter explains how to use this printer under Mac OS X. The example procedures in this chapter explain configuration under Mac OS X 10.4.

# **Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver**

# **∰**Important

- ☐ If you want to use this printer in a Mac OS environment, update to Mac OS 10.2.8 or higher.
- **1** Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.
- **2** Double-click the CD-ROM icon.
- **3** Double-click the [Mac OS X] folder.
- Double-click the [PPD Installer] folder.
- **5** Double-click the package file icon.
- **6** Follow the instructions on the screen.

# 7

# **Specifying the Printer**

This section explains how to configure this printer using Printer Setup Utility.

# **Using USB**

Use this procedure to connect the computer to the printer via USB.

The printer is automatically added, if the connection is successfully detected.

- 1 Connect the printer and computer using the USB cable, and then turn the printer's power switch to on.
- 2 Start [Printer Setup Utility].

Under Mac OS X 10.5, start [System Preferences] and click [Print & FAX].

Under Mac OS X 10.3, click [Print & FAX] in [System Preferences], and then click [Set Up Printers...].

Under Mac OS X 10.2.8, start [Print Center].

- Click [Add] or the [+] button.
  - Mac OS X 10.5 Click [Default].
  - ❖ Mac OS X 10.4

Click a printer that has "USB" indicated in the "Connection" column.

❖ Mac OS X 10.3 or lower

Click **[USB]** on the pop-up menu.

The connected printer appears.

Select the printer, and then select its manufacturer from the [Print Using] pop-up menu.

Under Mac OS X 10.5, select the printer you are using from the **[Printer Name]** list, and **[kind]** of USB.

Under Mac OS X 10.3 or lower, select the printer you are using from the **[Printer Model:]** pop-up menu.

- Select the connected printer from the list of printer models, and then click [Add].
- **6** Quit [Printer Setup Utility].
  - Note

☐ USB2.0 can be used only with Mac OS X 10.3.3 or higher.

# **Using TCP/IP**

To connect the printer via TCP/IP, you must complete the following four steps.

- ① Print the test page
- ② Install Smart Organizing Monitor if necessary
- 3 Specify the printer's IP address if necessary
- Add the printer using [Printer Setup Utility]

# Note

☐ If the printer is obtaining its IP address automatically from a DHCP server, you do not need to perform "2. Install Smart Organizing Monitor" and "3. Specify the printer's IP address".

#### Printing a test page

To install the printer driver, you must first confirm the printer's IP address.

Make sure the network cable is properly connected to the printer before you print the test page.

- 1 Turn the printer's power switch to off, and then wait a few seconds.
- While pressing down the [Job Reset] key, turn the printer's power switch back to on, and then keep the key pressed down until the Alert indicator flashes once.
- 3 Printing starts when the printer is fully warmed up.

Printing starts approximately 30 seconds after the Alert Indicator starts blinking.

# Note

- ☐ If the printer is obtaining its IP address automatically from a DHCP server, you do not need to install Smart Organizing Monitor separately. Proceed to p.83 "Setting Up the PPD File" and add the printer.
- ☐ If the printer cannot obtain its IP address from a DHCP server, install Smart Organizing Monitor and specify the IP address, before adding the printer.
- ☐ You can also use Web Image Monitor to change the IP address obtained from a DHCP server. To access Web Image Monitor, use the IP address printed on the test page.

# ${\mathcal P}$ Reference

For details about Web Image Monitor, see p.37 "Using Web Image Monitor". For the installation procedure, see p.89 "Installing Smart Organizing Monitor".

# Specifying the printer's IP address

# **∰**Important

- ☐ If the printer is obtaining its IP address automatically from a DHCP server, you do not need to perform this procedure. Proceed to p.83 "Setting Up the PPD File" and add the printer.
- 1 Connect the printer and computer using the USB cable, and then turn the printer's power switch to on.
- 2 Start Smart Organizing Monitor from the [Applications] folder. The [Printer Driver Selection] dialog box appears.
- In the [Printer Driver Selection] dialog box, select this printer, and then click [OK].

Smart Organizing Monitor appears.

- 4 On the [User Tools] tab, click [IP Address].
- In [IP Address], enter the IP address you want to set for the printer.

The MAC address is displayed automatically.

7

#### Setting Up the PPD File

1 Start [Printer Setup Utility].

Under Mac OS X 10.5, start [System Preferences] and click [Print & FAX].

Under Mac OS X 10.3, click [Print & FAX] in [System Preferences], and then click [Set Up Printers...].

Under Mac OS X 10.2.8, start [Print Center].

- 2 Click [Add] or [+] button.
  - Mac OS X 10.5
     Click [Default]. If the printer name is not displayed, select the icon that corresponds to your network environment.
  - Mac OS X 10.4 Click [More Printers...]. Then select the zone from the second pop-up menu.
  - Mac OS X 10.3 or lower Click [Rendezvous] on the first pop-up menu.
- Select the printer, and then select its manufacturer from the [Print Using] pop-up menu.

Under Mac OS X 10.5, select the printer you are using from the [Printer Name] list

Under Mac OS X 10.3 or lower, manufacturer from the **[Printer Model:]** pop-up menu.

- Select the connected printer from the list of printer models, and then click [Add].
- **5** Quit [Printer Setup Utility].

# 7

# **Setting Up Options**

Use this procedure to configure the printer's options.

# 1 Start [Printer Setup Utility].

Under Mac OS X 10.5, start [System Preferences] and click [Print & FAX].

Under Mac OS X 10.3, click [Print & FAX] in [System Preferences], and then click [Set Up Printers...].

Under Mac OS X 10.2.8, start [Print Center].

The printer list appears.

# **2** Select this printer.

- Mac OS X 10.5 Click [Options & Supplies...].
- Mac OS X 10.4 Click [Printer Setup...], and then proceed to step 4.
- Mac OS X 10.3 or lower Click [Show Info].
- **3** Select [Installable Options] or [Driver].
- Select the option you want to set up, and then select an appropriate setting for it.
- Click [Apply Changes] or [OK].
- **6** Exit [Printer Setup Utility].

### Note

☐ If the option you want to select is not displayed, PPD files may not be set up correctly. To complete the setup, check the name of the PPD file displayed in the dialog box.

# **Setting Up for Printing**

Use the following procedures to configure the printer.

# Making paper settings from an application

- 1 Open the file you want to print.
- 2 On the [File] menu, click [Page Setup...].
- Check that the printer you want to use is displayed in [Format for], and then select the paper size you want to use in [Paper Size].

If this printer is not displayed in **[Format for]**, select the printer you want to use.

4 Configure the settings, and then click [OK].

# 

The **[Page Setup...]** dialog box varies depending on the application you use. For details, see the manuals provided with the Mac OS X.

# Setting up for printing from an application

- 1 Open the file you want to print.
- 2 On the [File] menu, click [Print...].
- In the [Printer] list, select the printer.
- 1 Configure the print settings, and then click [Print].

# Canceling a Print Job from the Computer

# 1 Start [Printer Setup Utility].

Under Mac OS X 10.5, start [System Preferences] and click [Print & FAX].

Under Mac OS X 10.3, click [Print & FAX] in [System Preferences], and then click [Set Up Printers...].

Under Mac OS X 10.2.8, start [Print Center].

- 2 Double-click the name of this printer.
- **3** Select the name of the job you want to cancel, and then click the Delete icon.

# **∅** Note

- ☐ If the printer is shared by multiple computers, be careful not to cancel a print job of other user.
- ☐ You cannot stop printing data that has already been processed. For this reason, printing may continue for a few pages after you cancel printing.
- ☐ To stop a large data size print job may take a while.

7

# **Using PostScript 3**

Use the PostScript 3 driver to print files.

You can use the following functions if [Printer Features] is selected in the [Print] dialog:

#### ❖ Media Type

Use this function to select the paper type.

In the **[Feature Sets]** list, select **[Media Type]**, and then, in the **[Media Type]** list, select the paper type you want to use for printing.

#### Dithering

Use this function to specify the rendering mode.

In the **[Feature Sets]** list, select **[Dithering]**, and then, in the **[Dithering]** list, select the rendering mode.

You can select Automatic, Photographic, or Text.

#### Print Quality

Use this function to select the print quality.

In the [Feature Sets] list, select [Imaging], and then, in the [Print Quality] list, select the print quality.

You can select 600 x 600 dpi or 1200 x 600 dpi.

### **❖** Toner Saving

Use this function to reduce the amount of toner used when printing. To reduce toner consumption, in the **[Feature Sets]** list, select **[Toner]**. Then set **[Toner Saving]** to **[On]**.

# ❖ Print Blank Pages

Use this function to print blank pages.

To print blank pages, in the [Feature Sets] list, select [Toner]. Then set [Print Blank Pages] to [On].

# Watermark Type

Use this function to select the watermark style.

In the **[Feature Sets]** list, select **[Watermark Text]**, and then select the watermark type in the list.

You can select Outlined, Solid, or Transparent Text.

#### ❖ Watermark Text

Use this function to select the watermark text.

In the **[Feature Sets]** list, select **[Watermark Text]**, and then select the watermark text in the list.

You can select the following text:

- CONFIDENTIAL
- URGENT
- DRAFT
- ORIGINAL
- COPY

#### ❖ Watermark Font Size (Points)

Use this function to select the watermark font size.

In the **[Feature Sets]** list, select **[Watermark Text]**, and then, select the watermark font size in the list.

#### ❖ Watermark Font Typeface

Use this function to select the watermark font typeface.

In the [Feature Sets] list, select [Watermark Text], and then, select the watermark typeface.

#### Watermark Font Shading

Use this function to select the watermark font shading.

In the **[Feature Sets]** list, select **[Watermark Text]**, and then, select the watermark font shading in the list.

#### Watermark Position

Use this function to select the watermark position.

In the [Feature Sets] list, select [Watermark Location]. Then, in the [Watermark Position (Horizontal)] and [Watermark Position (Vertical)] lists, select the horizontal and vertical positions, respectively.

# ❖ Watermark Angle

Use this function to select the watermark angle.

In the **[Feature Sets]** list, select **[Watermark Location]**, and then , select the watermark angle in the list.

#### Watermark

Use this function to select which page(s) to print the watermark on.

In the [Feature Sets] list, select [Watermark Location], and then, in the [Watermark] list, select which page(s) you want to print the watermark on.

You can select Off, First Page Only, or All Pages.

# 7

# **Using Smart Organizing Monitor**

This section explains about using Smart Organizing Monitor under Mac OS X. Using Smart Organizing Monitor, you can check the printer status and change printer settings from your client computer.

The following operations are possible with Smart Organizing Monitor:

- Displaying printer status or settings
- Printing a list of printer configurations
- Making settings for paper loaded into each input tray
- Making input tray settings
- Changing factory-set default settings
- Making network protocol settings
- Making printer settings
- Displaying the printer status and supply information
- Making SMTP Settings
- Making SNMP Settings
- Making Alert Settings
- Making PCL Settings

# **Installing Smart Organizing Monitor**

Follow the procedure below to install Smart Organizing Monitor under Mac OS X.

- **1** Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.
- 2 Double-click the CD-ROM icon.
- **3** Double-click the [Mac OS X] folder.
- Double-click the [Utility] folder.
- Double-click the package file icon.
- **6** Follow the instructions on the screen.

# **Displaying the Smart Organizing Monitor Dialog Box**

To display the Smart Organizing Monitor dialog box, double-click [Smart Organizing Monitor] in the [Applications] folder.

# **Displaying the Printer Status**

In the Smart Organizing Monitor dialog box, you can check the status of monitored printers. The printer status is displayed using graphics and comments.

#### Note

☐ If Smart Organizing Monitor is monitoring multiple printers, the [Printer Driver Selection] dialog box appears. Select the printer driver used by the target printer, and then click [OK]. To check the status of a network printer, click [Search Network Printer].

# **Displaying the Printer Information**

Smart Organizing Monitor features three tabs, [Status], [Job Log], and [User Tools]. On these tabs, you can view information about a monitored printer, such as its configuration details and current status.

#### Displaying the printer status

When you click the **[Status]** tab, the printer name and tree appear. Click an item in the tree to display information relating to it.

#### Print Cartridge

Displays the remaining amount of each toner. The following are used to indicate the remaining amount: Level 1 to 5, "Almost Empty" and "Empty". A graphic also indicates each toner's status.

# ❖ Input Tray

You can check the following information about the input trays.

- Input Tray
   Displays the installed input trays.
- Status
  Displays the input tray status using a graphic.
- Paper Size
   Displays the size of the paper loaded into each input tray.
- Paper Type
   Displays the type of the paper loaded into each input tray.

#### Maintenance

Displays the consumable names and status. The graphics also indicate the consumables status.

#### ❖ System

Displays the system information about the printer, such as the model name, system version, memory size, and printer language.

#### Counter

Displays information about the counter.

#### ❖ Network

Displays network details such as the printer's IP address and network-related comments.

## 

For details about what you can perform on each tab in the Smart Organizing Monitor dialog box, see Smart Organizing Monitor Help.

#### Printing the printer configurations

On the [User Tools] tab, you can print lists of printer information.

# **∰**Important

- ☐ You can print the configuration page only when the printer is not busy processing jobs.
- ☐ To use this function, the printer must be monitored from Smart Organizing Monitor via a supported printer driver.

In the **[List/Test Print:]** list, select the item you want to print. You can print the following:

# Configuration Page

The current configurations and general information of the printer are printed.

# ❖ PCL Config./Font Page

The installed PCL font list is printed.

# ❖ PS Config./Font Page

The installed PS font list is printed.

Use the printed configuration page to check the information, such as general information and printer configuration.

The procedure for printing the configuration page is described as an example.

# 1 On the [User Tools] tab, in the [List/Test Print:] list, select [Configuration Page].

# 2 Click [Print].

The configuration page is printed.

# **Printer Configuration**

Clicking [Printer Configuration] on the [User Tools] tab enables you to change the printer settings in the [Printer Configuration] dialog box.

You can use the [Printer Configuration] dialog box to change the settings of:

- Paper Input
- Maintenance
- System
- Network
- Printer

#### Note

☐ [Printer Configuration] can be used only when there are no print jobs waiting to be processed on this printer.

# 

For details about each item you can specify in the [Printer Configuration] dialog box, see Smart Organizing Monitor Help.

#### About menu and mode

There are two modes you can use to access the **[Printer Configuration]** dialog box: for administrator mode and general users mode.

Available tabs in the **[Printer Configuration]** dialog box differ depending on the mode you are in.

#### Administrator

In the **[Access Code]** dialog box, enter an access code. All tabs in the **[Printer Configuration]** dialog box are available.

#### General users

Only the [Paper Input] tab is available.

1

#### Changing the paper settings

On the [Paper Input] tab, you can change paper size and other paper settings.

### Note

 $\Box$  The paper settings are not available for the bypass tray.

#### ❖ Tray 1

• Paper Size

The following sizes are available:

A4 (210 x 297 mm), B5 JIS (182 x 257 mm), A5 (148 x 210 mm), B6 JIS (128 x 182 mm), A6 (105 x 148 mm), 8 1/2 x 14, 8 1/2 x 11, 5 1/2 x 8 1/2, 7 1/4 x 10 1/2, 8 x 13, 8 1/2 x 13, 8 1/4 x 13, 16K, Custom Paper Size

Paper Type

The following paper types are available:

Thin Paper, Thick Paper 1, Plain Paper 1, Thick Paper 2, Recycled Paper, Color Paper, Preprinted Paper, Prepunched Paper, Letterhead, Bond Paper, Cardstock, Labels

• Custom Paper Size

You can make the custom paper size settings, when **[Custom Paper Size]** is selected.

- Unit:
  - Specify the unit of measurement in "mm" or "inch".
- Horizontal:

Specify the horizontal width between 100 and 216 mm (3.94 and 8.50 inch).

• Vertical:

Specify the vertical length between 148 and 356 mm (5.83 and 14.02 inch).

# ❖ Tray 2

• Paper Size

The following sizes are available:

A4 (210 x 297 mm), B5 JIS(182 x 257 mm), A5(148 x 210 mm), 8 1/2 x 14, 8 1/2 x 11, 5 1/2 x 8 1/2

• Paper Type

The following paper types are available:

Thin Paper, Plain Paper 1, Thick Paper 1, Recycled Paper, Color Paper, Preprinted Paper, Prepunched Paper, Letterhead

### Tray Priority

Select the priority tray from the **[Default Tray:]** list, when the optional paper feed unit is attached to the printer.

#### ❖ Bypass Tray

• Paper Size

The following sizes are available: A4 (210 x 297 mm), B5 JIS (182 x 257 mm), A5 (148 x 210 mm), B6 JIS (128 x 182 mm), A6 (105 x 148 mm), 8 1/2 x 14, 8 1/2 x 11, 5 1/2 x 8 1/2, 7 1/4 x 10 1/2, 16K, 4 1/8 x 9 1/2, 3 7/8 x 7 1/2, C5 Env, C6 Env, DL Env, Custom Paper Size

Paper Type

The following paper types are available:

Thin Paper, Thick Paper 1, Plain Paper 1, Thick Paper 2, Recycled Paper, Color Paper, Preprinted Paper, Prepunched Paper, Letterhead, Bond Paper, Cardstock, Labels, Envelope, OHP

• Custom Paper Size

You can make the custom paper size settings, when **[Custom Paper Size]** is selected.

- Unit: Specify the unit of measurement in "mm" or "inch".
- Horizontal: Specify the horizontal width between 90 and 216 mm (3.54 and 8.50 inch).
- Vertical: Specify the vertical length between 140 and 356 mm (5.51 and 14.02 inch).

## Note

☐ Tray 2 is available only when the optional paper feed unit is attached to the printer.

#### Adjusting registration

On the [Maintenance] tab, you can adjust print starting positions.

Normally, you do not have to adjust registration. However, adjustment can be useful in some cases, especially if you want to print in a specific position. Under [Registration: Tray 1], [Registration: Tray 2], [Registration: Bypass Tray], and [Registration: Duplex Tray] you can adjust the print image position printed on the sheet fed from each tray. To check the adjustment result, use [Print Test Sheet].

#### Setting basic functions

On the **[System]** tab, you can set the basic functions required to use the printer. The printer can be used on factory-set defaults, but the configuration can be changed depending on the condition of the user. The changed condition holds even if the printer is turned off.

The access code can be changed on this tab.

#### Making network-related settings

On the [Network 1], [Network 2], and [Network 3] tabs, you can set configurations about network connection and communication.

The following operations are possible on these tabs:

- Checking the device name and other printer information
- Making interface settings, including the timeout setting
- Checking or making TCP/IP settings
- Checking or making SMTP settings
- Checking or making SNMP and Alert settings

# Settings conditions for printing

On the [Printer:] tab, you can set conditions for printing.

In the **[PCL]** area, you can specify the conditions such as Orientation and font settings.

# Note

☐ Only PCL related settings can be modified in this area.

# 8. Appendix

# Software and Utilities Included on the CD-ROM

The following software and utility are included in the CD-ROMs that come with this printer.

#### Smart Organizing Monitor

Allows users and system administrators to check and configure the printer from a client computer.

#### Viewing the contents of the CD-ROM

Follow the procedure below to view the contents of the CD-ROM.

**1** Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

2 Click [Browse This CD-ROM].

Explorer starts and displays the contents of the CD-ROM.

# **Printer Drivers for this Printer**

Printing requires installing a printer driver appropriate to your operating system. The following driver is included on the CD-ROM provided with this printer.

# ❖ PCL 6 printer driver

This printer driver allows the computer to communicate with the printer via a printer language.

The following operating system is supported.

• Windows 2000/XP/Vista and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2/2008

# PostScript 3 Printer Drivers and PPD files

PostScript 3 printer driver and the PPD files are included on the CD-ROM provided with this printer. PostScript 3 printer driver allow the computer to communicate with the printer using a printer language. PPD files allow the printer driver to enable specific printer functions.

The following operating system is supported.

 Windows 2000/XP/Vista, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2/2008, and Mac OS X 10.2.8 (or later)

# Note

☐ The PostScript 3 printer driver and PPD files are included on the CD-ROM labeled "Printer Drivers and Utilities".

#### ❖ PPD files

PPD files are included on the CD-ROM provided with this printer. PPD files allow the printer driver to enable specific printer functions.

# **Smart Organizing Monitor**

You can use Smart Organizing Monitor to check and configure the printer from a client computer.

#### ❖ File path UTILITY

#### Available functions

Smart Organizing Monitor enables you to check the printer settings as well as configuring them from your client computer.

# **₽** Reference

For information about using Smart Organizing Monitor, see p.57 "Using Smart Organizing Monitor".

# 8

# Cautions to Take When Using in a Network

# **Using DHCP**

You can use this printer in a DHCP environment.

- Supported DHCP servers are those which are included with Windows 2000 Server, and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2/2008.
- DHCP relay-agent is not supported. If you use DHCP relay-agent on a network via ISDN, it will result in increased line charges. This is because your computer connects to the ISDN line whenever a packet is transferred from the printer.
- If there is more than one DHCP server, use the same setting for all servers. The printer operates using data from the DHCP server that responds first.

### Using AutoNet

If the printer's IPv4 address is not assigned by a DHCP server automatically, a temporary IPv4 address starting with 169.254, which is not used on the network, can be automatically selected by the printer.

If an AutoNet address is set as the printer's IP address, it changes every time you turn on the printer. Configure the TCP/IP settings according to your network environment.

You must change this setting to "on" to use AutoNet.

## Note

- ☐ The IP address assigned by the DHCP server is given priority over that selected by AutoNet.
- $\square$  You can confirm the current IPv4 address on the configuration page.
- ☐ The printer cannot communicate with devices that do not have the AutoNet function. However, this printer can communicate with Macintosh computers running Mac OS X 10.2.3. or higher.

# Using Adobe PageMaker Version 6.0, 6.5, or 7.0

Under Windows 2000/XP with Adobe PageMaker, you need to copy PPD files to the PageMaker folder.

PPD files have the ".ppd" extension in the folder "DRIVERS\PS\XP\_VISTA\ (Language)\DISK1\" on the CD-ROM.

The third folder "(Language)" may be substituted by an appropriate language name.

Copy the ".ppd" file to the PageMaker folder.

- For PageMaker 6.0 default installation The directory is "C:\PM6\RSRC\PPD4".
- For PageMaker 6.5 default installation
  The directory is "C:\PM65\RSRC\USENGLISH\PPD4".
  The "USENGLISH" may vary depending on your language selection.
- For PageMaker 7.0 default installation
  The directory is "C:\PM7\RSRC\USENGLISH\PPD4".
  The "USENGLISH" may vary depending on your language selection.

### Note

- ☐ If the driver is not set correctly after copying the ".ppd" file, printing may not be performed properly.
- ☐ When using PageMaker, the optional features that can be selected by the printer driver will not be active. The following procedure describes how to activate the optional printer features.
  - ① On the [File] menu, click [Print]. The [Print Document] dialog box appears.
  - ② Make the necessary settings in the **[Features]** box.

8

# When Using Windows Terminal Service/Citrix Presentation Server/Citrix XenApp

The following explains how to use Windows Terminal Service and Citrix Presentation Server/Citrix XenApp.

# **Operating Environment**

The following operating systems and Citrix Presentation Server/Citrix XenApp versions are supported.

#### Windows 2000 Server/Advanced Server

- Citrix Presentation Server 4.0
- Citrix XenApp 4.5

#### Windows Server 2003/2003 R2

- Citrix Presentation Server 4.0
- Citrix XenApp 4.5

# **Supported Printer Drivers**

## When Windows Terminal Service is operating

- PCL printer driver
- PostScript 3

The following limitations apply to the Windows Terminal Service environment. These limitations are built in Windows Terminal Service or Citrix Presentation Server/Citrix XenApp.

### Citrix Presentation Server/Citrix XenApp [Auto-creating client printers]

Using **[Auto-creating client printers]**, you can select a logical printer created by copying the client's local printer data to the Citrix Presentation Server/Citrix XenApp. We strongly recommend testing this function in your network environment before using it for your work.

- The settings for optional equipment will not be stored in the server after the equipment is disconnected. The settings for optional equipment will be restored to its defaults each time the client computer logs on to the server.
- When printing a large number of bitmap images or using the server in a WAN environment over dial-up lines such as ISDN, printing may not be possible or errors may occur, depending on data transfer rates.

### Citrix Presentation Server/Citrix XenApp [Printer driver replication]

Using **[Printer driver replication]**, you can distribute printer drivers across all servers in a server farm. We strongly recommend testing this function in your network environment before using it for your work.

• If the printer drivers are not properly copied, install them directly onto each server.

8

# **INDEX**

Access code, 62, 92 Adjusting registrations, 64, 95 Administrator password, 53 Administrator settings, 53 Adobe PageMaker, 100 Alert message, 48 Auto Duplex, 3 AutoNet, 99 Auto Run, 22  B	E  E-mail, 51 E-Mail notification, 66 Ethernet, 5  F  Form Feed, 31  H  Help Source File Setting, 56		
Backup settings, 54 Bidirectional communication, 23, 24 conditions, 23  C Canceling a job control panel, 31, 32	Installing  Download, 7  network environment, 8  PCL printer driver, 8  PostScript 3 printer driver, 13  USB, 16		
Windows, 32 CD-ROM, 97 Citrix Presentation Server /Citrix XenApp, 101 limitations, 102	J Job Log tab, 60, 61 L		
operating environment, 101  Collate, 33  Command  ftp, 75  lpr, 75  Configuration page, 52, 69  Smart Organizing Monitor, 61, 91	Language, 39 Limitations Citrix Presentation Server /Citrix XenApp, 102 Windows Terminal Service, 102		
Connection method, 5 local connection, 5, 6 network connection, 5 Counter, 41 Cover, 34 Custom Paper Size, 63, 93	Machine information, 42 Mac OS X, 79 canceling a print job, 86 option setting, 84 paper settings from an application, 85 setting up for printing, 85 Mail authentication, 67		
Default settings, 53 DHCP server, 99 Displaying the printer status Smart Organizing Monitor, 58, 90	Making option settings, 23 Manual Duplex, 3, 36 Model types, 3		

Network environment setup, 75 Network settings, 45	Shared printer, 15 Smart Organizing Monitor, 57, 89, 97 displaying, 58, 89 file path, 98 install, 57, 89
Paper settings, 43 Paper tray, 40 PCL, 65, 95 PCL 6 printer driver, 97 PCL Config./Font Page, 61, 91 PCL printer driver, 8 PostScript 3 printer driver, 13, 87, 97 PPD files, 97 setting up, 83 Print cartridge, 40 Printer Configuration administrator, 62, 92 general users, 62, 92 menu and mode, 62, 92	Mac OS X, 89 Maintenance tab, 64, 95 Network 1, 2, 3 tab (Mac), 95 Network 1, 2, 3 tab (Windows), 65 paper settings, 63, 93 System tab, 65, 95 SMTP, 51, 65, 95 SMTP authentication, 67 SNMP, 49, 65, 68, 95 Software and utilities, 97 Specifying the printer, 80 Standard TCP/IP, 5 Status tab, 60, 90
Printer configuration, 61, 62, 91, 92 Printer drivers, 97 Printer Drivers and Utilities, 8, 13 Printer Driver Selection, 58 Printer information, 60, 90 Printer properties  PCL printer drivers, 25 Windows 2000, 25 Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, 27 Windows XP, 27 Printer settings	TCP/IP, 65, 81, 95 Toner, 40 Top Page, 39 Tray priority, 43 Troubleshooting USB, 21 Type 1 model, 3 Type 2 model, 3
application, 26, 28, 30 PCL printer drivers, 25 Printers and Faxes window, 27 Printer window, 25, 29 Printing Preferences, 26, 28, 30 Printer Setup Utility, 83 Printer status, 60, 90	UDP, 68 USB, 80 User Tools tab, 60, 61, 90, 91 Printer Configuration, 62, 92
Printer status, 60, 90 Printer tab, 65, 95 Printer types, 3 Printing commands, 76  ftp, 77  lpr, 76 Printing files directly from Windows, 75 Print server, 15, 73 PS Config./Font Page, 61, 91  R Replaceable parts, 40	Watermark, 35 Web Image Monitor, 37 Top Page, 39 Web Image Monitor Help, 56 Windows network printer, 6, 15 Windows printing port, 5 Windows Server 2008 printer properties, 29 Windows Terminal Service, 101 limitations, 102 supported printer drivers, 101
Restore settings, 55	Windows Vista printer properties, 29

S

#### **Trademarks**

Microsoft<sup>®</sup>, Windows<sup>®</sup>, Windows Server<sup>®</sup>, and Windows Vista<sup>®</sup> are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Adobe, Acrobat, Acrobat Reader, PageMaker PostScript, and Reader are registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Apple, Macintosh, Mac OS and Safari are trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Citrix® is a registered trademark of Citrix Systems, Inc.

PCL® is a registered trademark of Hewlett-Packard Company.

Linux® is the registered trademark of Linus Toravalds in the U.S. and other counties.

UNIX® is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

Monotype is a registered trademark of Monotype Imaging, Inc.

IPS is a trademark or registered trademark of Zoran Corporation and/or its subsidiaries in the United States or other countries.

Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and might be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all rights in those marks.

The proper names of the Windows operating systems are as follows:

#### The product names of Windows 2000 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional

Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Server

Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Advanced Server

#### The product names of Windows XP are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional

Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition

#### The product names of Windows Vista are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows Vista® Ultimate

Microsoft® Windows Vista® Enterprise

Microsoft® Windows Vista® Business

Microsoft® Windows Vista® Home Premium

Microsoft® Windows Vista® Home Basic

#### The product names of Windows Server 2003 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Standard Edition

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Enterprise Edition

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Web Edition

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Datacenter Edition

#### The product names of Windows Server 2003 R2 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 R2 Standard Edition

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 R2 Enterprise Edition

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 R2 Datacenter Edition

#### The product names of Windows Server 2008 are as follows:

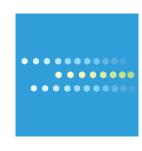
Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Standard

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Enterprise

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Datacenter



☐ PostScript 3 in this manual stands for "Adobe PostScript 3 Emulation".





# Software Installation Guide for Network Connection Software-Installationsanleitung für Netzwerkverbindungen



# SP 3400N/SP 3410DN



# **English**

This manual briefly describes the procedure for installation of the printer driver under the network environment. If you use this printer using the USB cable, see *Software Guide* for the installation of the printer driver.

For correct use, please be sure to read *Quick Installation Guide* and complete the settings described in the guide.

The following four steps are required to use this printer.

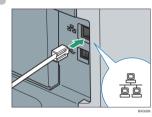
- 1. Printing a test page
- 2. Installing Smart Organizing Monitor if necessary
- 3. Specifying the printer's IP address if necessary
- 4. Installing the printer driver

#### Note:

 If the printer is obtaining its IP address automatically from a DHCP server, you do not need to perform "2. Installing Smart Organizing Monitor" and "3. Specifying the printer's IP address".

# Printing a Test Page

Connect the printer and computer using an Ethernet cable.



- While pressing down the [Job Reset] key, turn the printer's power switch on, and then keep the key pressed until the Alert indicator start to flash.
  - Printing starts approximately 30 seconds after the Alert Indicator starts flashing.
- Check the printer's IP address from the printed test page. Reference:
  - You can also use Web Image Monitor to change the IP address obtained from a DHCP server. To access Web Image Monitor, use the IP address printed on the test page. For details about Web Image Monitor, see Software Guide.

# Installing Smart Organizing Monitor

- Quit all applications currently running.
- Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.
- Select an interface language, and then click [OK].
- Click [Smart Organizing Monitor]

Select a language for Smart Organizing Monitor installer, and then click [Next >].

- 6 Click [Next >].
- After reading the agreement, click [Yes].
- Click [Next>] twice.
- 9 Click [Finish].

# Specifying the Printer's IP Address

On the [Start] menu, point to [All Programs]>[Smart Organizing Monitor for 3400 Series] > [Smart Organizing Monitor for 3400 Series Status], to start Smart Organizing Monitor.

#### Note:

- In a Windows Vista environment, select [Run as Administrator] to start Smart Organizing Monitor.
- Click [IP Address...], and then enter the printer's MAC address that was printed on the test page. (ex: 00-11-22-aa-bb-cc) in the [MAC Address] box.
- In the [IP Address] box, enter the IP address you want to set for the printer.
- Click [OK] twice, and then click [Close].

# Installing the Printer Driver

- On the [Printer Drivers and Utilities] dialog box, click the name of the printer driver you want to install.
- After reading the agreement, click [I accept the agreement.], and then click [Next >].
- Select the [Search for network printers.] check box, and then click [Next >].
- When the list of found printers appears, click this printer, and then click [Next >].
- If necessary, double-click the printer to display and configure its settings, and then click [Continue].
- If a message appears informing you that the installation was successfully completed, click [Finish].
  - If the IP address setting or the printer search fails, please make sure the printer is connected to the same network segment as the PC.

# Deutsch

Dieses Handbuch liefert eine kurze Beschreibung des Verfahrens für die Installation des Druckertreibers in der Netzwerkumgebung.

Falls Sie diesen Drucker mit dem USB-Kabel verwenden, finden Sie weitere Informationen zur Installation des Druckertreibers unter Software-Anleitung.

Lesen Sie bitte für die korrekte Verwendung die Kurzanleitung zur Installation und führen Sie die in der Anleitung beschriebenen Einstellungen aus.

Zur Verwendung dieses Druckers sind die folgenden vier Schritte notwendig:

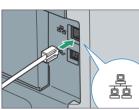
- 1. Ausdrucken einer Testseite
- 2. Installieren von Smart Organizing Monitor falls notwendig
- 3. Festlegen der IP-Adresse des Druckers falls notwendig
- 4. Installieren des Druckertreibers

#### Hinweis

 Falls der Drucker seine IP-Adresse automatisch von einem DHCP-Server bezieht, brauchen Sie "2. Installieren von Smart Organizing Monitor" und "3. Festlegen der IP-Adresse des Druckers" nicht auszuführen.

# Ausdrucken einer Testseite

Den Drucker mit einem Ethernet-Kabel an den Computer anschließen.



- Schalten Sie den Netzschalter des Druckers ein, während Sie die Taste [Job-Reset] drücken, und halten Sie die Taste gedrückt, bis die Warnung-Anzeige anfängt zu blinken.

   Der Druckvorgang startet ungefähr 30 Sekunden nachdem
  - die Warnung-Anzeige angefangen hat zu blinken.
- Überprüfen Sie die IP-Adresse des Druckers anhand der ausgedruckten Testseite.

#### Referenz:

 Sie können die von einem DHCP-Server erhaltene IP-Adresse auch mit dem Web Image Monitor ändern. Verwenden Sie die auf der Testseite ausgedruckte IP-Adresse, um auf den Web Image Monitor zuzugreifen. Nähere Einzelheiten zum Web Image Monitor finden Sie in der Software-Anleitung.

# Installieren von Smart Organizing Monitor

- Beenden Sie alle derzeit ausgeführten Programme.
- Legen Sie die CD-ROM in das CD-ROM-Laufwerk ein.
- Eine Sprache für die Benutzeroberfläche wählen und dann auf [OK] klicken.
- Auf [Smart Organizing Monitor] klicken.

Wählen Sie eine Sprache für das Installationsprogramm Smart Organizing Monitor und klicken Sie dann auf [Weiter >].

Klicken Sie auf [Weiter >].

Klicken Sie nach dem Lesen der Vereinbarung auf [Ja].

- Klicken Sie zweimal auf [Weiter >].
- Klicken Sie auf [Fertig stellen].

# Festlegen der IP-Adresse des Druckers

- Zeigen Sie im Menü [Start] auf [Alle Programme]>[Smart Organizing Monitor for 3400 Series] > [Smart Organizing Monitor for 3400 Series-Status], um den Smart Organizing Monitor zu starten.
  - Wählen Sie unter Windows Vista [Als Administrator ausführen], um den Smart Organizing Monitor zu starten.
- Klicken Sie auf [IP-Adresse...] und geben Sie dann die MAC-Adresse des Druckers ein, die auf die Testseite gedruckt wurde. (Beispiel: 00-11-22-aa-bb-cc) im Feld [MAC-Adresse].
- Geben Sie im Feld [IP-Adresse] die IP-Adresse ein, die Sie für den Drucker einstellen wollen.
- Klicken Sie zweimal auf [OK] und klicken Sie dann auf [Schließen].

# Installieren des Druckertreibers

- Klicken Sie im Dialogfeld [Printer Drivers and Utilities] auf den Namen des Druckertreibers, den Sie installieren wollen.
- Klicken Sie nach dem Lesen der Vereinbarung auf [Ich akzeptiere die Lizenzvereinbarung.] und klicken Sie anschließend auf [Weiter >].
- Wählen Sie das Markierungsfeld [Nach Netzwerkdruckern suchen.] und klicken Sie dann auf [Weiter >].
- Wenn die Liste der gefundenen Drucker erscheint, klicken Sie auf diesen Drucker und klicken Sie dann auf [Weiter >].
- Doppelklicken Sie falls notwendig auf den Drucker, um seine Einstellungen anzuzeigen und zu konfigurieren und klicken Sie dann auf [Fortsetzen].
- Wenn eine Meldung erscheint, dass die Installation erfolgreich abgeschlossen wurde, klicken Sie auf [Fertig stellen].
  Hinweis:
  - Falls die Einstellung der IP-Adresse oder die Druckersuche fehlschlägt, vergewissern Sie sich bitte, dass der Drucker an dasselbe Netzwerksegment wie der PC angeschlossen ist.

# Guide d'installation du logiciel pour une connexion réseau

# Guida all'installazione del software con una connessione di rete

# **Français**

Ce manuel décrit brièvement la procédure d'installation du pilote d'impression dans un environnement réseau. Si vous utilisez cette imprimante avec le câble USB, consultez le Manuel du logiciel pour l'installation du pilote d'impression.

Pour une utilisation correcte, assurez-vous de lire le Guide d'installation rapide et de configurer les paramètres décrits dans le guide.

Les quatre étapes suivantes sont requises pour utiliser cette imprimante.

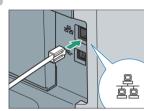
- 1. Impression d'une page de test
- 2. Installation de Smart Organizing Monitor si nécessaire
- 3. Spécification de l'adresse IP de l'imprimante si nécessaire
- 4. Installation du pilote d'impression

#### Remarque:

• Si l'imprimante obtient automatiquement son adresse IP à partir d'un serveur DHCP, vous n'avez pas besoin d'effectuer "2. Installation de Smart Organizing Monitor" et "3. Spécification de l'adresse IP de l'imprimante"

# Impression d'une page de test

Connectez l'imprimante et l'ordinateur avec un câble Ethernet.



- Tout en appuyant sur la touche [Réinitialiser travail], mettez l'imprimante sous tension puis maintenez la touche enfoncée jusqu'à ce que le voyant Alerte commence à clignoter.
  - · L'impression commence environ 30 secondes après que le voyant Alerte commence à cliqnoter.
- Vérifiez l'adresse IP de l'imprimante à partir de la page de test imprimée.
  - Vous pouvez également utiliser Web Image Monitor pour modifier l'adresse IP obtenue à partir d'un serveur DHCP. Pour accéder à Web Image Monitor, utilisez l'adresse IP imprimée sur la page de test. Pour plus d'informations sur Web Image Monitor, reportez-vous au Manuel du logiciel.

# Installation de Smart Organizing Monitor

- Quittez toutes les applications ouvertes.
- Insérez le CD-ROM dans le lecteur de CD-ROM.
- Sélectionnez la langue de l'interface, puis cliquez sur [OK].
- Cliquez sur [Smart Organizing Monitor].

### Sélectionnez une langue pour le programme d'installation de Smart Organizing Monitor puis cliquez sur [Suivant >].

- Cliquez sur [Suivant >].
- Après avoir lu le contrat, cliquez sur [Oui].
- Cliquez deux fois sur [Suivant >].
- Cliquez sur [Terminer].

# Spécification de l'adresse IP de l'imprimante

- Dans le menu [Démarrer], placez le curseur sur [Tous les programmes] > [Smart Organizing Monitor for 3400 Series] > [État de Smart Organizing Monitor for 3400 Series] pour démarrer Smart Organizing Monitor. Remarque:
  - Dans un environnement Windows Vista, sélectionnez [Exécuter en tant qu'administrateur] pour démarrer Smart Organizing Monitor.
- Cliquez sur [Adresse IP...] puis saisissez l'adresse MAC de l'imprimante imprimée sur la page de test. (Ex : 00-11-22-aa-bb-cc) dans la case [Adresse MAC].
- Dans la case [Adresse IP], saisissez l'adresse IP que vous voulez définir pour l'imprimante.
- Cliquez deux fois sur [OK] puis cliquez sur [Fermer].

# Installation du pilote d'impression

- Dans la boîte de dialogue [Printer Drivers and Utilities], cliquez sur le nom du pilote d'impression que vous voulez installer.
- Après avoir lu le contrat, cliquez sur [J'accepte le contrat.], puis sur [Suivant >].
- Cochez la case [Détecter les imprimantes réseau.] puis cliquez sur [Suivant >].
- Quand la liste des imprimantes détectées s'affiche, cliquez sur cette imprimante puis sur [Suivant >].
- Si nécessaire, double-cliquez sur l'imprimante pour afficher et configurer ses paramètres, puis cliquez sur [Continuer].
- Si un message indiquant la réussite de l'installation s'affiche, cliquez sur [Terminer]. Remarque:
  - Si la configuration de l'adresse IP ou la recherche de l'imprimante échoue, assurez-vous que l'imprimante est connectée au même segment de réseau que l'ordinateur

## Italiano

Il presente manuale descrive brevemente la procedura di installazione del driver della stampante nell'ambiente di rete. Se la stampante viene utilizzata con il cavo USB, vedere la Guida software per l'installazione del driver della stampante.

Per un utilizzo corretto, leggere la Guida di installazione rapida e configurare le impostazioni descritte.

L'utilizzo della stampante richiede le quattro fasi seguenti.

- 1. Stampa di una pagina di prova
- 2. Installazione dello Smart Organizing Monitor, se necessario
- 3. Inserimento dell'indirizzo IP della stampante, se necessario
- 4. Installazione del driver della stampante

• Se la stampante ottiene l'indirizzo IP automaticamente da un server DHCP, non è necessario effettuare le fasi "2. Installazione dello Smart Organizing Monitor" e "3. Inserimento dell'indirizzo IP della stampante".

# Stampa di una pagina di prova

Collegare la stampante al computer utilizzando un cavo Ethernet.



- Tenendo premuto il tasto [Reset lavoro], azionare l'interruttore della stampante e tenere il tasto premuto finché la spia Avviso inizia a lampeggiare.
  - · La stampa inizia circa 30 secondi dopo l'accensione
- Controllare l'indirizzo IP stampato sulla pagina di prova.
  - È possibile utilizzare il Web Image Monitor per modificare l'indirizzo IP ottenuto dal server DHCP. Per accedere al Web Image Monitor, utilizzare l'indirizzo IP stampato sulla pagina di prova. Per ulteriori informazioni sul Web Image Monitor vedere la Guida software.

# **Installazione dello Smart Organizing** Monitor

- Chiudere tutte le applicazioni in esecuzione.
- Inserire il CD-ROM nell'apposita unità.
- Selezionare una lingua per l'interfaccia e fare clic su [OK].
- Fare clic su [Smart Organizing Monitor].

# Selezionare una lingua per il programma di installazione dello Smart Organizing Monitor e fare clic su [Avanti >].

- Fare clic su [Avanti >].
- Una volta letto il contratto, fare clic su [Sì].
- Fare clic su [Avanti >] due volte.
- Fare clic su [Fine].

# Inserimento dell'indirizzo IP della stampante

- Per avviare lo Smart Organizing Monitor, nel menu [Start] selezionare [Tutti i programmi]>[Smart Organizing Monitor for 3400 Series] > [Stato di Smart Organizing Monitor for 3400 Series]. Nota:
  - In Windows Vista selezionare [Esegui come amministratore] per avviare lo Smart Organizing Monitor.
- Fare clic su [Indirizzo IP...] e inserire l'indirizzo MAC della stampante presente sulla pagina di prova (es.: 00-11-22-aa-bb-cc) nella casella [Indirizzo MAC].
- Inserire l'indirizzo IP desiderato per la stampante nella casella [Indirizzo IP].
- Fare clic su [OK] due volte, quindi fare clic su [Chiudi].

# Installazione del driver della stampante

- Nella finestra di dialogo [Printer Drivers and Utilities], fare clic sul nome del driver della stampante da installare.
- Una volta letto il contratto, fare clic su [Accetto il contratto.], quindi fare clic su [Avanti >].
- Selezionare la casella di controllo [Cerca stampanti di rete.l e fare clic su [Avanti >].
- Quando viene visualizzato l'elenco delle stampanti rilevate, fare clic su questa stampante e quindi su [Avanti >].
- Se necessario, fare doppio clic sulla stampante per visualizzare e configurare le impostazioni, quindi fare clic su [Continua].
- Se viene visualizzato un messaggio che indica che l'installazione è stata eseguita con successo, fare clic su [Fine].
  - In caso di fallimento dell'impostazione dell'indirizzo IP o della ricerca della stampante, verificare che quest'ultima sia collegata allo stesso segmento di rete del PC.

Print M0128614 indd 2 09/10/13 16:52:49

# Guía de instalación de software para conexión en red

# Software-installatiehandleiding voor netwerkverbindingen

# **Español**

Este manual describe brevemente el procedimiento de instalación del controlador de la impresora en el entorno de red. Si utiliza la impresora con el cable USB, consulte el *Manual de software* para conocer el procedimiento de instalación del controlador de la impresora.

Para garantizar un uso adecuado, asegúrese de leer la Guía de Instalación Rápida y realice los ajustes descritos allí.

Los siguientes cuatro pasos son necesarios para utilizar la impresora.

- 1. Impresión de una página de prueba
- 2. Instalación de Smart Organizing Monitor si fuera necesario
- 3. Especificación de la dirección IP de la impresora si fuera necesario
- 4. Instalación del controlador de la impresora

#### Nota:

 Si la impresora obtiene la dirección IP automáticamente de un servidor DHCP, no necesita realizar los pasos "2. Instalación de Smart Organizing Monitor" ni "3. Especificación de la dirección IP de la impresora".

# Impresión de una página de prueba

Conecte la impresora al ordenador por medio de un cable Ethernet.



- Mientras pulsa la tecla [Cancelar trabajo], lleve el interruptor hasta la posición de encendido y mantenga pulsada la tecla hasta que el indicador de Alerta comience a parpadear.
  - La impresión comienza aproximadamente 30 segundos después de que el indicador de Alerta comienza a parpadear.
- Compruebe la dirección IP de la impresora desde la página de prueba impresa.

  Referencia:
  - También puede utilizar Web Image Monitor para cambiar la dirección IP obtenida del servidor DHCP. Para acceder a Web Image Monitor, utilice la dirección IP impresa en la página de prueba. Para obtener más información acerca de Web Image Monitor, consulte el Manual de software.

# 2 Instalación de Smart Organizing Monitor

- Cierre todos los programas que esté utilizando.
- 2 Introduzca el CD-ROM en la unidad de CD-ROM.
- Seleccione un idioma de interfaz y haga clic en [OK].
- Haga clic en [Smart Organizing Monitor].

# Seleccione un idioma para el instalador de Smart Organizing Monitor y después haga clic en [Siguiente >].

- Haga clic en [Siguiente >].
- Una vez que haya leído el contrato, haga clic en [Sí].
- Haga clic en [Siguiente >] dos veces.
- Haga clic en [Finalizar].

# Especificación de la dirección IP de la impresora

- En el menú [Inicio], vaya a [Todos los programas]>[Smart Organizing Monitor for 3400 Series] > [Estado de Smart Organizing Monitor for 3400 Series] para iniciar Smart Organizing Monitor.
  - En el entorno de Windows Vista, seleccione [Ejecutar como administrador] para iniciar Smart Organizing Monitor.
- Haga clic en [Dirección IP...] y después introduzca la dirección MAC de la impresora que se imprimió en la página de prueba (por ejemplo: 00-11-22-aa-bb-cc) en la casilla [Dirección MAC].
- En la casilla [Dirección IP], introduzca la dirección IP que desea configurar para la impresora.
- Haga clic en [Aceptar] dos veces y después haga clic en [Cerrar].

# Instalación del controlador de la impresora

- En el cuadro de diálogo [Printer Drivers and Utilities], haga clic en el nombre del controlador de impresora que desea instalar.
- Una vez que haya leído el contrato, haga clic en [Acepto el contrato.] y, a continuación, haga clic en [Siguiente >].
- Seleccione la casilla de verificación [Buscar impresoras en red.] y después haga clic en [Siguiente >].
- Cuando aparezca la lista de impresoras encontradas, haga clic en esta impresora y después haga clic en [Siguiente >].
- Si fuera necesario, haga doble clic en la impresora para visualizar y configurar los ajustes, y después haga clic en [Continuar].
- Si aparece el mensaje de que la instalación se completó correctamente, haga clic en [Finalizar].
  - Si la configuración de la dirección IP o la búsqueda de impresoras no se puede completar correctamente, asegúrese de que la impresora esté conectada al mismo segmento de red que el PC.

# **Nederlands**

Deze handleiding geeft een korte beschrijving van de installatieprocedure van het printerstuurprogramma binnen de netwerkomgeving. Indien u deze printer gebruikt met een USB-kabel, raadpleeg Softwarehandleiding voor de installatie van het printerstuurprogramma.

Voor een correct gebruik dient u de Verkorte Installatiehandleiding te lezen en de in de handleiding beschreven instellingen aanbrengen.

U dient de volgende vier stappen uit te voeren om de printer te gebruiken:

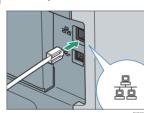
- 1. Een testpagina afdrukken
- 2. Smart Organizing Monitor installeren indien nodig
- 3. Het IP-adres van de printer specificeren indien nodig
- 4. Het printerstuurprogramma installeren

#### Opmerking

 Als de printer zijn IP-adres automatisch van een DHCP-server verkrijgt, hoeftt u niet punt 2 (Smart Organizing Monitor installeren) en 3 (Het IP-adres van de printer specificeren) uit te voeren.

# Een testpagina afdrukken

Sluit de printer met een Ethernetkabel aan op de computer.



- Terwijl u de toets [Taak Reset] ingedrukt houdt, schakelt u de hoofdschakelaar van de printer aan en vervolgens houdt u de toets ingedrukt tot het lampje Waarschuwing begint te knipperen.
  - Er wordt met afdrukken gestart ongeveer 30 seconden nadat het lampje Waarschuwing begint te knipperen.
- Controleer het IP-adres van de printer aan de hand van de afgedrukte testpagina.

  Referentie:
  - U kunt Web Image Monitor ook gebruiken om het IP-adres dat u verkregen heeft van een DHCP-server te wijzigen. Om toegang te verkrijgen tot de Web Image Monitor dient u het IP-adres op de testpagina te gebruiken. Raadpleeg de Softwarehandleiding voor meer informatie over de Web Image Monitor.

# 2 Smart Organizing Monitor installeren

- Sluit alle toepassingen die zijn geopend.
- Plaats de cd-rom in het cd-romstation.
- Selecteer een interfacetaal en klik op [OK].
- Klik op [Smart Organizing Monitor].

# Selecteer een taal voor het installatieprogramma van Smart Organizing Monitor en klik vervolgens op [Volgende >].

- Klik op [Volgende >].
- Klik op [Ja] nadat u de overeenkomst heeft gelezen.
- Klik tweemaal op [Volgende >].
- Klik op [Voltooien].

# Het IP-adres van de printer specificeren

- Onder het menu [Start] klikt u op [Alle programma's] >[Smart Organizing Monitor for 3400 Series] > [Status Smart Organizing Monitor for 3400 Series].

  Opmerking:
  - In een Windows Vista omgeving, selecteert u [Als administrator uitvoeren] om Smart Organizing Monitor op te starten.
- Klik op [IP-adres...] en voer vervolgens het MAC-adres van de printer in die op de testpagina werd afgedrukt. (bv.: 00-11-22-aa-bb-cc) in het venster [MAC-adres].
- In het venster [IP-adres], voert u het IP-adres in dat u wilt instellen voor de printer.
- Klik tweemaal op [OK] en klik vervolgens op [Afsl.].

# Het printerstuurprogramma installeren

- In het dialoogvenster [Printer Drivers and Utilities] klikt u op de naam van het printerstuurprogramma dat u wenst te installeren.
- Nadat u de overeenkomst heeft gelezen, klikt u op [lk ga akkoord met de overeenkomst.] en daarna op [Volgende >].
- Selecteer het vinkvakje [Zoek naar netwerkprinters.] en klik vervolgens op [Volgende >].
- Wanneer de lijst van gevonden printers verschijnt, klikt u op deze printer en klikt u vervolgens op [Volgende >].
- Indien nodig klikt u tweemaal op de weer te geven printer, configureert u de instellingen en vervolgens klikt u op [Doorgaan].
- Als er een bericht verschijnt met de melding dat de installatie met succes voltooid is, klik dan op [Voltooien]. Opmerking:
  - Indien de instelling van het IP-adres of het zoeken naar printers mislukt, controleer dan of de printer aangesloten is op hetzelfde netwerksegment als de PC.

Print M0128614.indd 3 09/10/13 16:52:54

# Guia de Instalação de Software para Ligação de Rede

# Guia de Instalação de Software para Conexão de Rede

# **Português**

O presente manual descreve brevemente o procedimento para instalar o controlador da impressora no ambiente de rede. Se utilizar esta impressora com o cabo USB, consulte o *Guia de Software* para a instalação do controlador da impressora.

Para uma utilização correcta, certifique-se de que lê o *Guia de Instalação Rápida* e configura as definições descritas no guia.

Os seguintes quatro passos são necessários para a utilização desta impressora.

- 1. Imprimir uma página de teste
- 2. Instalar o Smart Organizing Monitor, caso seja necessário
- 3. Especificar o endereço IP da impressora, caso seja necessário
- 4. Instalar o controlador da impressora

#### Nota

 Se a impressora obtém o endereço IP automaticamente do servidor DHCP, não precisa de executar o "2. Instalar o Smart Organizing Monitor" e "3. Especificar o endereço IP da impressora".

# Imprimir uma Página de Teste

Ligue a impressora e o computador com o cabo Ethernet.



- Ao premir a tecla [Apagar trabalho], ligue o interruptor de alimentação da impressora, e, de seguida, mantenha a tecla premida até que o indicador Alerta comece a piscar.
  - A impressão inicia aproximadamente 30 segundos depois do indicador Alerta começar a piscar.
- Verifique o endereço IP da impressora da página de teste imprimida. Referência:
  - Também pode utilizar o Web Image Monitor para alterar o endereço IP obtido do servidor DHCP. Para aceder ao Web Image Monitor, utilize o endereço IP impresso na página de teste. Para mais informações acerca do Web Image Monitor, consulte o Guia de Software.

# Instalar o Smart Organizing Monitor

- Feche todos os programas actualmente em execução.
- Introduza o CD-ROM na unidade de CD-ROM.
- Seleccione o idioma da interface e clique em [OK].
- Clique em [Smart Organizing Monitor].

### Seleccione uma língua para o programa de instalação Smart Organizing Monitor, e, de seguida, clique em [Seguinte >].

- Clique em [Seguinte >].
- Depois de ler o contrato, clique em [Sim].
- Duplo clique em [Seguinte >].
- Clique em [Terminar].

# Especificar o endereço IP da impressora

- No menu [Iniciar], em [Todos os programas]>[Smart Organizing Monitor for 3400 Series] > [Estado do Smart Organizing Monitor for 3400 Series], para iniciar o Smart Organizing Monitor.
  - Num ambiente Windows Vista, seleccione [Executar como administrador] para iniciar o Smart Organizing Monitor.
- Clique em [Endereço IP...], e, de seguida, introduza o endereço MAC impresso na página de teste. (ex.: 00-11-22-aa-bb-cc) na caixa [Endereço MAC].
- Na caixa [Endereço IP], introduza o endereço IP que quer definir para a impressora.
- Duplo clique em [OK] e, de seguida, em [Fechar].

# Instalar o controlador da impressora

- Na caixa de diálogo [Printer Drivers and Utilities], clique no nome do controlador da impressora que pretenda instalar.
- Depois de ler o acordo, clique em [Aceito o acordo.] e, em seguida, clique em [Seguinte >].
- Seleccione a caixa de selecção [Procurar impressoras de rede.] e, de seguida, clique em [Seguinte >].
- Quando for apresentada a lista de impressoras encontradas, clique nesta impressora e depois clique em [Seguinte >].
- Caso seja necessário, faça duplo clique na impressora para apresentar e configurar as definições, e, de seguida, clique em [Continuar].
- Se aparecer uma mensagem informando que a instalação foi concluída com sucesso, clique em [Terminar].
  - Se a definição do endereço IP ou a pesquisa de impressora falhar, certifique-se de que a impressora está ligada ao mesmo segmento de rede que o PC.

# Português do Brasil

O presente manual descreve brevemente o procedimento para instalar o driver da impressora no ambiente de rede. Se utilizar esta impressora com o cabo USB, consulte o *Guia de Software* para a instalação do driver da impressora.

- O instalador do driver não oferece suporte para português do Brasil.
- Para o seguinte procedimento em português brasileiro, consulte o Guia de instalação do driver.
- Siga este procedimento se deseja instalar a versão em inglês do driver de impressora.

Para a utilização correta, certifique-se de ler o *Guia de Instalação Rápida* e configurar as definições descritas no guia.

Os seguintes quatro passos são necessários para a utilização desta impressora.

- 1. Imprimir uma página de teste
- 2. Instalar o Smart Organizing Monitor, caso seja necessário
- 3. Especificar o endereço IP da impressora, caso seja necessário
- 4. Instalar o driver da impressora

#### Nota:

 Se a impressora obtém o endereço IP automaticamente do servidor DHCP, não é preciso executar "2. Instalar o Smart Organizing Monitor" e "3. Especificar o endereço IP da impressora".

# Imprimir uma Página de Teste

Conecte a impressora e o computador com o cabo Ethernet.



- Ao pressionar a tecla [Job Reset] ligue o interruptor de alimentação da impressora, e, em seguida, mantenha a tecla pressionada até que o indicador Alert comece a piscar.
  - A impressão inicia aproximadamente 30 segundos depois do indicador Alert começar a piscar.
  - Verifique o endereço IP da impressora na página de teste impressa.
    - Você também pode usar o Web Image Monitor para alterar o endereço IP obtido do servidor DHCP. Para acessar o Web Image Monitor, use o endereço IP impresso na página de teste. Para mais informações sobre o Web Image Monitor, consulte o Guia de Software.

# Instalar o Smart Organizing Monitor

- Encerre todos os aplicativos em execução.
- Insira o CD-ROM na unidade de CD-ROM.
- Seleccione o idioma da interface e clique em [OK].
- 4. Clique em [Smart Organizing Monitor].

# Selecione um idioma para o programa de instalação Smart

- Organizing Monitor, e, em seguida, clique em [Avançar >].

   O Smart Organizing Monitor oferece suporte para português do Brasil. Selecione português do Brasil.
- Clique em [Avançar >].
- Depois de ler o contrato, clique em [Sim].
- Clique duas vezes em [Avançar >].
- Clique em [Concluir].

# Especificar o endereço IP da impressora

- No menu [Iniciar], selecione [Todos os programas]>[Smart Organizing Monitor for 3400 Series] > [Estado do Smart Organizing Monitor for 3400 Series] para iniciar o Smart Organizing Monitor.
  - Em um ambiente Windows Vista, selecione [Executar como administrador] para iniciar o Smart Organizing Monitor.
- Clique em [Endereço IP...], e, em seguida, digite o endereço MAC impresso na página de teste. (ex.: 00-11-22-aa-bb-cc) na caixa [Endereço MAC].
- Na caixa [Endereço IP], digite o endereço IP que quer definir para a impressora.
- Clique duas vezes em [OK] e, em seguida, em [Fechar].

# Instalar o driver da impressora

- Na caixa de diálogo [Printer Drivers and Utilities], clique no nome do driver da impressora que pretende instalar.
- Depois de ler o acordo, clique em [l accept the agreement.] e, em seguida, clique em [Next >].
- Marque a caixa de seleção [Search for network printers.] e, em seguida, clique em [Next >].
- Quando for apresentada a lista de impressoras encontradas, clique nesta impressora e depois clique em [Next >].
- Caso seja necessário, clique duas vezes na impressora para apresentar e configurar as definições, e, em seguida, clique em [Continue].
- Se aparecer uma mensagem informando que a instalação foi concluída com sucesso, clique em [Finish].
  - Se a definição do endereço IP ou a pesquisa de impressora falhar, certifique-se de que a impressora está conectada ao mesmo segmento de rede que o PC.

Copyright © 2009
Printed in China
EN GB EN US DE DE FR FR IT IT
ES ES NL NL PT PT BR
M012-8614

Print\_M0128614.indd 4 09/10/13 16:52:59

# Using Smart Organizing Monitor under the Macintosh Environment

The following explains the items that are displayed on the Smart Organizing Monitor when using it under the Macintosh environment.

# **Device Settings**

# **#Important**

r Depending on your printer model, functions you can use may vary.

# **Smart Organizing Monitor**

Shows device status information.

#### ∨ Printer

To monitor a network printer, select [Search Network Printer].

[Search Network Printer]

In the dialog box, select the network printer you want to monitor, and then click **[OK]**.

#### ∨ Status

Current status of the printer is displayed.

#### Status tab

Displays details about selected items in the tree.

### v Displayed content of tree-selected items

Tree-selected items	Displayed content
Print Cartridge	Remaining toner levels.
Input Tray	Status of paper trays and the size and type of paper set in each.
Maintenance	Status of fuser unit, transfer roller unit, and paper feed roller unit.
System	System information: Model Name, System Version, Memory Size, PCL 5e, PCL XL, and PS3.
Counter	Status of total counter.
Network	Printer details: Device Name, Comment, IP Address, Subnet Mask, and MAC Address.

#### Job Log tab

Shows the print job information.

#### v User Name

Name of the user who printed the job (normally, the user who logged on to Windows).

#### ∨ File Name

Name of the printed document.

#### v Page(s)

Number of pages printed.

#### V Start Date

Date of printing.

#### ∨ Status

Current status of the printed job.

#### **User Tools tab**

Displays the test print setting and allows you to select whether to open the **[Printer Configuration]** settings.

#### ∨ List/Test Print

Select the item for test print.

### Note

r For details about test printing, see the printer operating instructions.

### • [Print]

Click this button for test print.

## ∨ [Printer Configuration]

Open the [Printer Configuration] settings.

If [Use] is selected for [Access Code] in the [System] tab, the tabs you can see/set may vary depending on the access code settings.

## Note

r [Printer Configuration] can be used when there is not print job waiting to be processed on this printer.

#### v IP Address

If you cannot obtain the IP address after the test printing, click this button to set the IP address manually.

## Note

r For details about test printing, see the printer operating instructions.

# **Printer Configuration**

# [Paper Input] Tab

Make paper settings such as size and type for each paper tray.

#### Tray 1

#### ∨ Paper Size

In the **[Paper Size]** list, select the size of paper loaded in the input tray. When **[Custom Paper Size]** is selected, specify one of the sizes below.

#### ∨ Paper Type

In the **[Paper Type]** list, select the paper type.

#### ∨ Custom Paper Size

Enter the custom paper size when [Custom Paper Size] is selected.

- Unit Select which units (mm or inch) to use for entering lengths in the [Horizontal] and [Vertical] boxes.
- Horizontal/Vertical Enter the custom paper size when [Custom Paper Size] is selected. In the units selected earlier (mm or inch), enter the length of the paper's short and long edges in the [Horizontal] and [Vertical] boxes respectively.

## Note

r Available paper sizes vary depending on the paper tray. For details about setting the paper size, see the printer operating instructions.

## Tray 2

### ∨ Paper Size

In the [Paper Size] list, select the size of paper loaded in the input tray.

## ∨ Paper Type

In the **[Paper Type]** list, select the paper type.

# Note

r Available paper sizes vary depending on the paper tray. For details about setting the paper size, see the printer operating instructions.

#### **Bypass Tray**

#### ∨ Paper Size

In the **[Paper Size]** list, select the size of paper loaded in the input tray. When **[Custom Paper Size]** is selected, specify one of the sizes below.

#### ∨ Paper Type

In the [Paper Type] list, select the paper type.

#### ∨ Custom Paper Size

Enter the custom paper size when **[Custom Paper Size]** is selected.

- Unit Select which units (mm or inch) to use for entering lengths in the [Horizontal] and [Vertical] boxes.
- Horizontal/Vertical Enter the custom paper size when **[Custom Paper Size]** is selected. In the units selected earlier (mm or inch), enter the length of the paper's short and long edges in the **[Horizontal]** and **[Vertical]** boxes respectively.

### Note

r Available paper sizes vary depending on the paper tray. For details about setting the paper size, see the printer operating instructions.

### **Tray Priority**

Select the tray used for the priority paper source.

**[Tray Priority]** is the tray selected immediately after the printer is turned on, and when Auto Select is chosen as the paper source for a job.

# [Maintenance] Tab

Make settings for adjusting printing position.

#### **Registration: Tray 1**

Adjust the position of Tray1 if it is installed.

#### ∨ [Print Test Sheet]

Click this button to check the printing position using a test print.

- Horizontal
  - After printing the test sheet, you can adjust the horizontal print position in the range of from -15 to +15 in increments of 0.1 mm.
- Vertical

After printing the test sheet, you can adjust the vertical print position in the range of from -15 to +15 in increments of 0.1 mm.

### Registration: Tray 2

Adjust the position of Tray2 if it is installed.

#### ∨ [Print Test Sheet]

Click this button to check the printing position using a test print.

- Horizontal
  - After printing the test sheet, you can adjust the horizontal print position in the range of from -15 to +15 in increments of 0.1 mm.
- Vertical

After printing the test sheet, you can adjust the vertical print position in the range of from -15 to +15 in increments of 0.1 mm.

### **Registration: Bypass Tray**

Adjust the position of the print image on sheets fed from the bypass tray.

### ∨ [Print Test Sheet]

Click this button to check the printing position using a test print.

- Horizontal
  - After printing the test sheet, you can adjust the horizontal print position in the range of from -15 to +15 in increments of 0.1 mm.
- Vertical
  - After printing the test sheet, you can adjust the vertical print position in the range of from -15 to +15 in increments of 0.1 mm.

### **Registration: Duplex Tray**

When the duplex tray is installed and duplex print is enabled, you can adjust the position of the back side print if necessary.

#### ∨ [Print Test Sheet]

Click this button to check the printing position using a test print.

- Horizontal
   After printing the test sheet, you can adjust the horizontal print position in the range of from -15 to +15 in increments of 0.1 mm.
- Vertical After printing the test sheet, you can adjust the vertical print position in the range of from -15 to +15 in increments of 0.1 mm.

# [System] Tab

Make system, access code, and language settings.

To configure a function, select the check box to the left of the function's name.

#### Auto Continue

Select how the printer responds if it does not have a paper tray that contains the paper size and type specified by a job.

Off

The printer stops operation until the correct paper is loaded.

• On

After 10 seconds, the printer begins printing regardless of the size and type of paper loaded in the tray.

#### v Copies

Specify a number of print copies (1 to 999).

#### ∨ Sub Paper Size

Select whether or not to enable A4/Letter switching.

#### v 2 Sides Print

Prints on both sides of sheets.

Off

Disables Duplex printing.

• Long Edge Bind

Prints output so that you can open it to the left when bound along the left edge like a book.

• Short Edge Bind

Prints output so that you can open it to the top when bound along the top like a calendar.

## Note

r If you are using a printer that does not support automatic duplex printing, perform normal single-sided printing, and then reset the sheet to print on the other side.

## ∨ Blank Pages

Select whether or not to print on blank pages.

## v Image Density Adjustment

Specify the print density (-3 to +3) in the box.

### V Low Humidity Mode

If the printer is used in a room where humidity level is low, black lines of a few millimeters thick may appear on printouts with 75 mm spaces in between. Selecting **[On]** for this setting may prevent these lines from appearing (wait for about one day until this setting becomes effective). Note that when this setting is enabled, the printer automatically performs self-maintenance in every 10 minutes.

#### ∨ Energy Saver Mode 1

When this function is enabled, less electricity is used.

#### ∨ Energy Saver Mode 2

When this function is enabled, less electricity is used than under Energy Saver 1.

### Note

r Even if **[Energy Saver Mode 2]** is enabled, the printer will not enter Energy Saver Mode 2 for two hours if **[Low Humidity Mode]** is enabled.

#### ∨ Energy Saver Mode 2 Timer

When [Energy Saver Mode 2] is enabled, you can specify a timeout period.

#### ∨ Print Error Page

Prints an error report if an error occurs during print data processing.

#### **V** Device Comment

Enter a note about the printer, using up to 32 alphanumeric characters.

# ∨ [Restore Factory Defaults]

Resets all settings to their default values.

#### **Access Code**

Select whether or not to use the access code.

If you select **[Use]**, the tabs you can see/set may vary depending on the access code settings. If you select **[Do not Use]**, the access code setting screen does not appear before the **[Printer Configuration]** setting. **[Do not Use]** is set as the factory default. Change it to **[Use]** if you want access code control.

## • [Change Access Code...]

If you selected **[Use]** for **[Access Code]**, click this button to change the access code.

### [Language]

Select the language you want to use.

# [Network 1] Tab

Use this page to enter administrative information related to the network.

To display or configure a setting, select it in the list.

The following menus are available in the list.

- Information
- Interface
- TCP/IP

#### Information

Displays the printer name, the printer comment, and MAC address of the printer.

#### Interface

#### V I/O Timeout (USB)

Select the USB timeout from the drop down list.

The printer waits before ending a print job if more data is not received through USB. When the specified period elapses, data reception through other interfaces is possible.

### ∨ I/O Timeout (Network)

Select the network timeout from the drop down list. If EOF (\*) is not received by the network printer, the printer remains waiting. When the specified period elapses, data reception through other interfaces is possible.

(\*)End Of File: a code placed by a computer after a file's last byte of data.

## ∨ Ethernet Speed

Select the Ethernet communication speed. For normal use, select **[Auto Select]**. This allows the device to select the optimum speed.

If communication with the device fails, select [10Mbps Half D.], [10Mbps Full D.], [100Mbps Half D.], or [100Mbps Full D.].

#### ∨ Fixed USB Port

Off

Allocates automatically a USB serial number that is different from the USB serial numbers of other printers.

On

Allocates automatically a USB serial number that is the same as the USB serial number of other printers.

#### TCP/IP

#### V IP Address

This device's network IP address. Enter it in the following format: "xxx.xxx.xxx" (replace "x" with the appropriate numbers, for example: "123.123.123.123").

#### ∨ Subnet Mask

Specify the part of the IP address used as the subnet mask. Enter it in the following format: "xxx.xxx.xxx" (replace "x" with the appropriate numbers, for example: "123.123.123.123").

### Default Gateway Address

Enter the default gateway address. The default gateway address is the IP address of the host or router used as the gateway when communicating (printing or exchanging information) with a computer on another network.

#### v DHCP

Select **[On]** to automatically configure the network settings using the DHCP server. Select **[Off]** to configure the network settings manually. If DHCP is active, all TCP/IP settings are obtained automatically from the DHCP server.

#### V DNS Method

The default setting is **[Auto]**. When **[Auto]** is selected, the primary DNS server IP address and the DNS domain name obtained from the DHCP server are displayed.

If you select **[Manual]**, you can manually specify the primary DNS server IP address and the DNS domain name.

### ∨ Primary DNS Server IP

Enter the DNS Server IP address in the following format "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx" (replace "x" with the appropriate numbers, for example: "123.123.123.123") When the DNS method is set to "Auto", you cannot manually specify the primary DNS server IP address.

#### V DNS Domain Name

Enter the domain name, using up to 32 alphanumeric characters. When the DNS method is set to "Auto", you cannot manually specify the primary DNS domain name.

# [Network 2] Tab

Use this page to enter administrative information related to the network.

To display or configure a setting, select it in the list.

The following menus are available in the list.

- SMTP
- SNMP

#### **SMTP**

#### ∨ SMTP Authentication

Select whether to log on to the SMTP server using SMTP AUTH for sending e-mail.

#### v Port Number

Enter the port number used for sending e-mail to the SMTP server. Enter a value between 1 and 65535.

#### V SMTP Server Name

Enter the IP address or host name of the SMTP server using up to 32 characters.

### Note

r When the SMTP server host name is specified, a DNS server must be set up so the IP address can be obtained from the host name (forward lookup).

#### ∨ User Name

Enter the SMTP account name to be used when **[SMTP Authentication]** is set to **[On]**. Use up to 32 alphanumeric characters.

#### v Password

Enter the SMTP account password to be used when **[SMTP Authentication]** is enabled. Use up to 32 alphanumeric characters.

#### ∨ E-mail Address

Enter the e-mail address used for e-mail notification. Use up to 64 alphanumeric characters.

#### SNMP

### ∨ Get Community

Enter the name of the community to which the network interface board belongs, using up to 15 alphanumeric characters. Only requests from hosts whose community name matches the name you set here will be accepted. To search for this printer in Smart Organizing Monitor, specify "public".

#### ∨ Manager IP Address

Enter the host computer's IP address.

To have requests accepted from any host, set the address to "0.0.0.0".

# [Network 3] Tab

Use this page to enter administrative information related to the network.

To display or configure a setting, select it in the list.

The following menus are available in the list.

- Alert 1
- Alert 2

#### Alert 1/Alert 2

#### ∨ Display Name

Enter the name to display for the alert message, using up to 32 alphanumeric characters.

#### ∨ E-mail Address

Enter the e-mail address to which the alert messages will be sent, using up to 64 alphanumeric characters.

#### ∨ Paper Jam

Select this check box to send an alert message to the specified e-mail address when a paper jam occurs.

### v Print Cartridge Near Empty

Select this check box to send an alert message to the specified e-mail address when a print cartridge is nearly empty.

# ∨ Print Cartridge Empty

Select this check box to send an alert message to the specified e-mail address when a print cartridge is completely empty and needs immediate replacement.

#### ∨ No Paper

Select this check box to send an alert message to the specified e-mail address when the paper has run out.

### ∨ Service Required

Select this check box to send an alert message to the specified e-mail address when the printer requires servicing.

### v Cover Open

Select the check box to send an alert message to the specified e-mail address when the printer cover is open.

# [Printer] Tab

You can change the following settings which can be set on the printer.

#### **PCL**

#### ∨ Orientation

Specify the default page orientation.

- Portrait
  - Prints the document so that the paper's shorter sides are horizontal.
- Landscape Prints the document so that the paper's longer sides are horizontal.

#### ∨ Form Lines

Specify the number of lines (5 to 128) per page. 60 is default for Letter-size paper, 64 is default for A4.

#### ∨ Font Number

Specify the default font in the box.

#### v Point Size

Specify the default font size (4 to 999.75) in the box.

#### v Font Pitch

Specify the pitch of the default font, if the font is a fixed pitch font selected from the list.

#### ∨ Symbol Set

Specify the default symbol set from the list.

#### ∨ Courier Font

Select [Regular] or [Dark] from the list.

#### ∨ Ext. A4 Width

Widens the printable area of A4 sheets by reducing side margin width.

#### Append CR to LF

Specify whether or not to append a CR code to each LF code to print text more clearly.

#### Note

r Only PCL related settings can be modified in this area.

# **Appendix**

### **Trademarks**

- Apple, Macintosh, and Mac are registered trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and might be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all rights to those marks.

# SP 3400N/SP 3410DN

### Information

#### Introduction

This manual contains detailed instructions and notes on the operation and use of this machine. For your safety and benefit, read this manual carefully before using the machine. Keep this manual in a handy place for quick reference.

#### **Important**

Contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice. In no event will the company be liable for direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages as a result of handling or operating the machine.



Some illustrations in this manual might be slightly different from the machine.

Certain options might not be available in some countries. For details, please contact your local dealer.

Depending on which country you are in, certain units may be optional. For details, please contact your local dealer.

#### Caution

For good print quality, the supplier recommends that you use genuine toner from the supplier.

The supplier shall not be responsible for any damage or expense that might result from the use of parts other than genuine parts from the supplier with your office products.





#### **Notes**

The model names of the machines do not appear in the following pages. Check the type of your machine before reading this manual. (For details, see "Printer Types", **Hardware Guide** in the CD-ROM.)

Model type	Model name	<b>Duplex Printing</b>
Type 1	SP 3400N	Manual
Type 2	SP 3410DN	Automatic

Certain types might not be available in some countries.

Two kinds of size notation are employed in this manual. With this machine refer to the inch version.

#### **Power Source**

120 V, 50/60 Hz, 10 A or more

Please be sure to connect the power cable to a power source as above.









# Laws and Regulations

### Legal Prohibition

Do not copy or print any item for which reproduction is prohibited by law.

Copying or printing the following items is generally prohibited by local law:

bank notes, revenue stamps, bonds, stock certificates, bank drafts, checks, passports, driver's licenses.

The preceding list is meant as a guide only and is not inclusive. We assume no responsibility for its completeness or accuracy. If you have any questions concerning the legality of copying or printing certain items, consult with your legal advisor.

### Laser Safety

This equipment complies with requirements of 21 CFR subchapter J for class 1 laser products.

This equipment contains one AlGaInP laser diode, with 9 milliwatt, 648 - 663 nanometer wavelength.

This equipment does not emit hazardous light, since the beam is totally enclosed during all customer modes of operation and maintenance.

#### Caution:

Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual might result in hazardous radiation exposure.









# **Safety Information**

When using your machine, the following safety precautions should always be followed.

In this manual, the following important symbols are used:

#### **MARNING:**

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if instructions are not followed, could result in death or serious injury.

#### **A** CAUTION:

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if instructions are not followed, may result in minor or moderate injury or damage to property.

#### **Environments Where the Machine Can be Used**

#### **↑** WARNING:

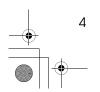
• Keep the machine away from flammable liquids, gases, and aerosols. A fire or an electric shock might occur.

#### **↑** CAUTION:

- Keep the machine away from humidity and dust. Otherwise a fire or an electric shock might occur. Do not place the machine on an unstable or tilted surface. If it topples over, an injury might occur.
- Keep the machine in an area that is within optimum environmental conditions. Operating the machine in an environment that is outside the recommended ranges of humidity and temperature can cause an electrical fire hazard. Keep the area around the socket free of dust. Accumulated dust can become an electrical fire hazard.
- Make sure the room where you are using the machine is well ventilated and spacious. Good ventilation is especially important when the machine is used heavily.
- Machine sound levels exceeding \(\sigma\_{\text{wad}} > 65.8\) dB (A) are not suitable for desk work environments, so place the machine in another room.
- When new, electrical devices containing volatile materials will normally release emissions into the air of their vicinity. For this reason, for the first few days after installation of a new device, strong ventilation inside the room where it is placed is necessary.

#### Note

- ☐ When you use this machine for a long time in a confined space without good ventilation, you may detect an odd smell. To keep the workplace comfortable, we recommend that you keep it well ventilated.
- ☐ To avoid possible build-up ozone, make sure to locate this machine in a large well ventilated room that has an air turnover of more than 30 m³/hr/person.









# **Handling Power Cords and Power Plugs**

#### **MARNING:**

- The supplied power cord is for use with this equipment only. Do not use with other appliances. Doing so may result in fire, electric shock, or injury.
- The wall outlet shall be installed near the machine and shall be easily accessible.
- Connect the machine to the power source specified in this manual and do not use any other power sources. Connect the power cord directly to a wall outlet and do not use an extension cord. Power sources not specified in this manual and extension cords are electric shock or fire hazards.
- Power cords that are damaged, broken, modified, trapped under heavy objects, pulled hard, or bent severely are electric shock and fire
- Touching the prongs of the power cable's plug with anything metallic constitutes a fire and electric shock hazard.
- Plug and unplug the power cable with dry hands, or an electric shock could occur.

#### **↑** CAUTION:

- When you disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet, always pull the plug (not the cable).
- It is dangerous to handle the plug with wet hands. Doing this may result in receiving an electric shock.
- Be sure to disconnect the plug from the wall outlet and clean the prongs and the area around the prongs at least once a year. Allowing dust to build up on the plug constitutes a fire hazard.









### **Handling the Machine**

#### **⚠ CAUTION:**

- Before moving the machine, unplug the power cord from the wall outlet. If the cord is unplugged abruptly, it could become damaged. Damaged plugs or cords can cause an electrical or fire hazard.
- Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before you move the machine.
   While moving the machine, you should take care that the power cord will not be damaged under the machine.
- The machine weighs approximately 12 kg (26.4 lb.). When moving the machine, use the inset grips on both sides, and lift slowly. The machine will break or cause injury if dropped.
- When moving the machine after use, do not take out the print cartridge to prevent toner spill inside the machine.
- Do not connect the Ethernet port of the machine to a network that may supply excess voltage, such as a telephone line. Doing so may result in fire or electric shock.

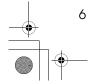
### **Handling the Machine's Interior**

#### **MARNING:**

 Do not attempt any maintenance or troubleshooting other than that mentioned in this manual. This machine contains a laser beam generator and direct exposure to laser beams can cause permanent eye damage.

#### **A CAUTION:**

- The inside of this machine becomes very hot. Do not touch parts labelled "\textit{\textit{\textit{L}}" (indicating a hot surface).}}
- The fusing section of this machine might be very hot. Caution should be taken when removing misfed paper.
- Lifting the paper feed unit carelessly or dropping it may cause injury.
- Do not pull out the paper tray forcefully. If you do, the tray might fall and cause an injury.









## **Handling the Consumables**

#### **MARNING:**

- Do not incinerate used toner or toner containers. Toner dust might ignite when exposed to an open flame. Dispose of used toner containers in accordance with local regulations.
- Do not store toner, used toner, or toner containers in a place with an open flame. The toner might ignite and cause burns of a fire.
- Do not incinerate spilled toner or used toner. Toner dust might ignite when exposed to an open flame.
- Keep the polythene materials (bags, gloves, etc.) supplied with this
  machine away from babies and small children at all times. Suffocation
  can result if polythene materials are brought into contact with the
  mouth or nose.

#### **A CAUTION:**

- Keep toner (used or unused) and toner containers out of reach of children.
- If toner or used toner is inhaled, gargle with plenty of water and move into a fresh air environment. Consult a doctor if necessary.
- If toner or used toner gets into your eyes, flush immediately with large amounts of water. Consult a doctor if necessary.
- If toner or used toner is swallowed, dilute by drinking a large amount of water. Consult a doctor if necessary.
- Avoid getting toner on your clothes or skin when removing a paper jam or replacing toner. If your skin comes into contact with toner, wash the affected area thoroughly with soap and water.
- If toner gets on your clothing, wash with cold water. Hot water will set the toner into the fabric and may make removing the stain impossible.
- Our products are engineered to meet high standards of quality and functionality, and we recommend that you use only the expendable supplies available at an authorized dealer.







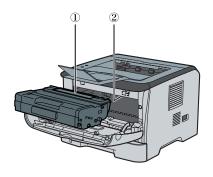


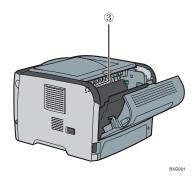
# Safety Labels of This Machine

This section explains the machine's safety information labels.

### Positions of MARNING and CAUTION labels

This machine has labels for <u>AWARNING</u> and <u>ACAUTION</u> at the positions shown below. For safety, please follow the instructions and handle the machine as indicated.





**(1**)



\*\*O not incinerate to tener or tomer containers.

\*\*Tomer data may cause flashinosh when exposed to an open flame, "he pas incinerer its cortouches in les bothes de cartouches de tome.

\*\*Not passe a lame flamme mus, le carde de toner peut provoquet un retour de flamme relief.

\*\*Not option a lame flamme mus, le carde de toner peut provoquet un retour de flamme 

\*\*Not option flamme si de record de flamme si de considerate de lame si pui incidente della tressi a 

\*\*Not option flamme si de record de flamme si de recordante della tressi a 

\*\*Not option flamme si de recordante della tressi a 

\*\*Not option to tressi a southeredere de lame. Explore de terra peut eliminares al ser explosité passin de 

\*\*Not option to retour au sou enthaligem an logio. O plut de tres podre equolité quadre option à claime si 

\*\*Not option to retour au sou enthaligem an logio. O plut de tres podre equolité quadre option à claime si 

\*\*Not option to retour au sou enthaligem an logio. O plut de tres podre equolité quadre option à claime si 

\*\*Not option to retour de la considerate de la considera

Do not incinerate toner or toner containers.

Toner dust may cause flashback when exposed to an open flame.





Do not touch the parts a label indicates. The inside of the machine could be very hot.

(3)

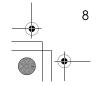


Do not touch the parts a label indicates. The inside of the machine could be very hot.

# **Power Switch Symbols**

The meanings of the symbols for the switches on this machine are as follows:

- I:POWER ON.
- O:POWER OFF.











# **Environmental Features (Type 1 Model)**

This machine is equipped with the following Energy Saver modes: Energy Saver mode 1 and Energy Saver mode 2. The machine recovers from Energy Saver mode when it receives a print job, or when the [Stop/Start] key is pressed.

#### Energy Saver mode 1

This machine automatically enters Energy Saver mode 1 about 30 seconds after the last operation is completed.

#### Energy Saver mode 2

This machine automatically enters Energy Saver mode 2.1 minute after the last operation is completed.

#### Specifications

Energy Saver mode 1	Power Consumption	70 W or less
	Default Time	Off
	Recovery Time	10 seconds or less
Energy Saver mode 2	Power Consumption	5 W or less
	Default Time	1 minute
	Recovery Time	20 seconds or less



☐ For details about how to configure Energy Saver mode, see "Using Smart Organizing Monitor", **Software Guide** in the CD-ROM.

### **₽** Reference

"Using Smart Organizing Monitor", Software Guide in the CD-ROM

#### ❖ Recycled Paper

We recommend you to use environmentally friendly recycled paper. Please contact your sales representative for recommended paper.











# **Environmental Features (Type 2 Model)**

### **ENERGY STAR Program**

ENERGY STAR® Program Requirements for Imaging Equipment



The ENERGY STAR® Program Requirements for Imaging Equipment encourages energy conservation by promoting energy efficient computers and other office equipment.

The program backs the development and dissemination of products that feature energy saving functions.

It is an open program in which manufacturers participate voluntarily.

Targeted products are computers, monitors, printers, facsimiles, copiers, scanners, and multifunction devices. Energy Star standards and logos are internationally uniform.

This machine is equipped with the following Energy Saver modes: Energy Saver mode 1 and Energy Saver mode 2. The machine recovers from Energy Saver mode when it receives a print job, or when the [Stop/Start] key is pressed.

#### Energy Saver mode 1

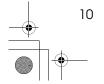
This machine automatically enters Energy Saver mode 1 about 30 seconds after the last operation is completed.

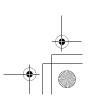
#### Energy Saver mode 2

This machine automatically enters Energy Saver mode 2.1 minute after the last operation is completed.

#### Specifications

Energy Saver mode 1	Power Consumption	70 W or less
	Default Time	Off
	Recovery Time	10 seconds or less
Energy Saver mode 2	Power Consumption	5 W or less
	Default Time	1 minute
	Recovery Time	20 seconds or less









- Note
- ☐ For details about how to configure Energy Saver mode, see "Using Smart Organizing Monitor", **Software Guide** in the CD-ROM.
- $\mathcal{P}$ Reference

"Using Smart Organizing Monitor", Software Guide in the CD-ROM

#### ❖ Recycled Paper

We recommend you to use environmentally friendly recycled paper. Please contact your sales representative for recommended paper.









## **Notice**

## Note to users in the United States of America

#### Note

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio /TV technician for help.

#### Caution

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

#### Note to users in Canada

#### Note

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

## Remarque concernant les utilisateurs au Canada

#### **Avertissement**

Cet appareil numérique de la classe B est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

• Properly shielded cables must be used for connections to host computer (and/or peripheral) in order to meet FCC emission limits.

Copyright © 2009 Printed in China EN US M012-8606









# **Notes for Users**

These notes provide additional information on using this product, and errata for the description in the operating manuals.

operating manuals.	
Topic	Correction
Hardware Guide Connecting the Printer > Network Connection	The following procedure is required after Step 1 in the Hardware Guide, and before Step 1 in the Software Installation Guide for
Connecting the 1 linter > Network Connection	Network Connection.
Software Installation Guide for Network Connection	After performing this procedure, proceed to the next step of each manual.
1.Printing a Test Page	Users in the EU
	⚠CAUTION:
	Properly shielded and grounded cables and connectors must be used for connections to a host computer (and/or peripheral) in order to meet emission limits.
	Users in the USA
	CAUTION: Properly shielded and grounded cables and connectors must be used for connections to host computer(and/or peripheral)in order to meet FCC emission limits.
	All Users  A) A ferrite core for the Ethernet interface cable is supplied with this machine. Make a loop in the cable about 5 cm (2 inch) (①) from the machine end of the cable. Attach the ferrite core.  B) Connect the Ethernet cable to the Ethernet port that is located on the rear side of the printer. Connect the cable end with the ferrite core to the printer. C) Connect the other end of the cable to the network, for example
W 1 C 1	using a hub.
Hardware Guide Paper and Other Media > Paper Recommendations > Loading Paper	When you have loaded paper in a paper source tray, always set the paper type and size for the tray using Smart Organizing Monitor or Web Image Monitor. If the printer and printer driver settings do not match, print results might not be as expected.
Hardware Guide	Envelopes whose flaps are open must be printed with the flaps
Paper and Other Media > Loading Paper >	open, and envelopes whose flaps are closed must be printed with
Loading Paper in the Bypass Tray > Loading	the flaps closed.
envelopes	Before loading envelopes, make sure they are as flat as possible.
Hardware Guide Appendix > Specifications > Main Unit	This product complies with the following safety standards.  This machine complies with the requirements of IEC60825-1:2007
Safety Information	(EN60825-1:2007) for class 1 laser product.
Laws and Regulations > Laser Safety	
Software Guide	When [Enable bidirectional support] is not selected, Smart
Preparing for Printing > Making Option	Organizing Monitor cannot be used. Select [Enable bidirectional
Settings for the Printer > If Bidirectional	support] to use the software.
Communication Is Disabled	
Software Guide	When a print error occurs, the settings cannot be changed using
Other Print Operations > If Errors Occur with	Smart Organizing Monitor.
the Specified Paper Size and Type  Software Guide	Shows the total number of sheets printed on both sides.
Monitoring and Configuring the Printer > Using	Shows the total number of sheets printed on both sides.
Web Image Monitor > Checking the System	
Information > Checking the Counter Information	

Software Guide	Do not specify "49999" in addition to "53550" for [Port #] under
Monitoring and Configuring the Printer > Using	[Network Print Settings].
Web Image Monitor > Configuring the Network	
Settings > Configuring the Network Application	
Settings	
Software Guide	A number between 1 through 999 can be specified for [DNS
Monitoring and Configuring the Printer > Using	Timeout [Seconds]].
Web Image Monitor > Configuring the Network	
Settings > Configuring the DNS Settings	
Software Guide	When you are printing via USB connection, the printer information
Monitoring and Configuring the Printer > Using	in Smart Organizing Monitor might not be updated correctly.
Smart Organizing Monitor > Displaying the	
Printer Status	
Software Guide	The correct syntax for the "lpr" command is as follows.
Special Operations under Windows > Printing	c:> lpr -S printer's IP address -P printer name [-o 1] \path\file name
Files Directly from Windows > Printing	c:> lpr -S printer's host name -P printer name [-o 1] \path\file name
Commands > lpr	
Software Guide	The correct syntax for the "ftp" command is as follows.
Special Operations under Windows > Printing	ftp>put \path\file name [Option]
Files Directly from Windows > Printing	ftp>mput \path\file name [\path\file name]
Commands > ftp	
Software Guide	"User" and "Password" for transferring data by ftp are both fixed to
Special Operations under Windows > Printing	"sysadm". To transfer data by ftp, enter "sysadm".
Files Directly from Windows > Printing	
Commands > ftp	

Topic	Errors	Correction
Hardware Guide	5. Remove the protective material	5. Remove the protective material
Installing the Printer and Options > Installing	attached inside the printer.	attached inside the printer.
the Printer > Unpacking		
Quick Installation Guide 2.Unpacking	800/14	60 FEB 100 FEB

The following descriptions do not apply to this machine.

Topic	Errors
Hardware Guide Connecting the Printer > Network Connection	#Important
Connecting the Finite > Feetwork Connection	Use shielded Ethernet cable. Unshielded cables create electromagnetic interference that could cause malfunctions.
Hardware Guide	Avoid using self-adhesive envelopes. They may cause printer
Paper and Other Media > Paper Recommendations	malfunctions.
> Types of Paper and Other Media > Types of paper	
Hardware Guide	
Paper and Other Media > Loading Paper > Loading	
Paper in the Bypass Tray > Loading envelopes	
Hardware Guide	Load paper of the selected size in the tray, and then change the
Troubleshooting > Error & Status Messages on	paper size setting with Smart Organizing Monitor.
Smart Organizing Monitor	
Software Guide	<b>𝒞</b> Note
Other Print Operations > Collate	If Auto Continue occurs on the first set, the Collate will be canceled.
	If form feed occurs on the first set, the Collate will be canceled.
	Reference
	For details about printing method, see the printer driver Help.

Save Date: 2009/11/16 10:29:00

Page 3 of 32

# Hinweise für Anwender

Diese Hinweise bieten zusätzliche Informationen zur Verwendung dieses Produkts sowie Berichtigungen zu den Beschreibungen in den Bedienungsanleitungen.

Thema	Berichtigung
Hardware-Anleitung	Das folgende Verfahren muss nach Schritt 1 in der Hardware-
Anschließen des Druckers > Netzwerkverbindung	Anleitung und vor Schritt 1 in der Software-Installationsanleitung
	für Netzwerkverbindungen durchgeführt werden.
Software-Installationsanleitung für	Nach Durchführung dieses Verfahrens fahren Sie mit dem nächsten
Netzwerkverbindungen	Schritt im jeweiligen Handbuch fort.
1. Ausdrucken einer Testseite	Anwender in der EU
	l •
	ACHTUNG:
	Zum Einhalten der Emissionsgrenzwerte müssen für Verbindungen
	mit einem Host-Computer (und/oder Peripheriegeräten) korrekt
	abgeschirmte und geerdete Kabel und Stecker verwendet werden.
	Anwender in den USA
	⚠ACHTUNG:
	Zum Einhalten der FCC-Emissionsgrenzwerte müssen für Verbindungen
	mit einem Host-Computer (und/oder Peripheriegeräten) korrekt
	abgeschirmte und geerdete Kabel und Stecker verwendet werden.
	Alle Anwender
	A) Ein Magnetkern für das Ethernet-Schnittstellenkabel wird
	mit diesem Gerät mitgeliefert.
	Machen Sie etwa 5 cm (2 Zoll)
	(①) vom gerätenahen Ende des
	Kabels eine Schlaufe. Bringen
	Sie den Magnetkern an.
	B) Schließen Sie das Ethernet-
	Kabel am Ethernet-Anschluss
	an, der sich an der Rückseite des Druckers befindet. Verbinden Sie das
	Kabelende, an dem sich der Magnetkern befindet, mit dem Drucker.
	C) Verbinden Sie das andere Ende des Kabels mit dem Netzwerk,
	zum Beispiel über einen Hub.
Hardware-Anleitung	Wenn Sie Papier in ein Papiermagazin eingelegt haben, stellen Sie
Papier und andere Medien > Hinweise zum	immer den Papiertyp und das Format für das Magazin mithilfe von
Papier > Einlegen von Papier	Smart Organizing Monitor oder Web Image Monitor ein. Wenn die
	Einstellungen in Drucker und Druckertreiber nicht übereinstimmen,
Hardware-Anleitung	sind die Druckergebnisse möglicherweise nicht wie erwartet.  Wenn Sie Umschläge bedrucken, legen Sie sie so ein, wie sie in der
Papier und andere Medien > Einlegen von	Packung liegen, also je nachdem entweder mit geöffneten oder
Papier > Einlegen von Papier in den Bypass >	geschlossenen Laschen.
Einlegen von Umschlägen	
Hardware-Anleitung	Dieses Produkt erfüllt die folgenden Sicherheitsstandards.
Anhang > Technische Daten > Hauptgerät	Dieses Gerät erfüllt die Anforderungen der IEC60825-1:2007
Sicherheitshinweise	(EN60825-1:2007) für Laser-Produkte der Klasse 1.
Gesetze und Auflagen > Sicherheitslaser	
Software-Anleitung	Wenn [Bidirektionale Unterstützung aktivieren] nicht gewählt ist,
Vorbereitung zum Drucken > Vornehmen von	kann Smart Organizing Monitor nicht verwendet werden. Wählen
Optionseinstellungen für den Drucker > Wenn die	Sie [Bidirektionale Unterstützung aktivieren] aus, um die Software
bidirektionale Kommunikation deaktiviert ist	zu verwenden.
<b>Software-Anleitung</b> Sonstige Druckvorgänge > Falls Fehler bei dem	Wenn ein Druckfehler auftritt, können die Einstellungen nicht mit
Sonstige Druckvorgange > Falls Fehler bei dem festgelegten Papiertyp und Papierformat auftreten	Smart Organizing Monitor geändert werden.
Software-Anleitung	Zeigt die Gesamtanzahl an beidseitig bedruckten Blättern.
Überwachen und Konfigurieren des Druckers	Zeigi die Gesamanzam an beidsettig bedruckten diattern.
> Verwenden des Web Image Monitor >	
Überprüfen der Systeminformationen >	
Überprüfen der Zählerinformationen	
Compraise del Zumermiormanonen	L

3

Software-Anleitung	Legen Sie nicht "49999" zusätzlich zu "53550" für [Anschluss Nr.]
Überwachen und Konfigurieren des Druckers >	unter [Netzwerk-Druck-Einstellungen] fest.
Verwenden des Web Image Monitor > Konfigurieren	_
der Netzwerkeinstellungen > Konfigurieren der	
Einstellungen der Netzwerkanwendung	
Software-Anleitung	Eine Zahl zwischen 1 und 999 kann für [DNS-Timeout [Sekunden]]
Überwachen und Konfigurieren des Druckers >	angegeben werden.
Verwenden des Web Image Monitor >	
Konfigurieren der Netzwerkeinstellungen >	
Konfigurieren der DNS-Einstellung	
Software-Anleitung	Wenn Sie über eine USB-Verbindung drucken, werden die
Überwachen und Konfigurieren des Druckers >	Druckerinformationen im Smart Organizing Monitor eventuell nicht
Verwenden des Smart Organizing Monitor >	korrekt aktualisiert.
Druckerstatus anzeigen	
Software-Anleitung	Die korrekte Syntax für den "lpr"-Befehl lautet wie folgt.
Spezielle Funktionsvorgänge unter Windows > Dateien	c:\> lpr -S IP-Adresse des Druckers -P Druckername [-o l] \Pfad\Dateiname
direkt unter Windows drucken > Druckbefehle > lpr	c:\> lpr -S Drucker-Hostname -P Druckername [-o 1] \Pfad\Dateiname
Software-Anleitung	Die korrekte Syntax für den "ftp"-Befehl lautet wie folgt.
Spezielle Funktionsvorgänge unter Windows > Dateien	ftp>put \ Pfad\Dateiname [Option]
direkt unter Windows drucken > Druckbefehle > ftp	ftp>mput \Pfad\Dateiname [\Pfad\Dateiname]
Software-Anleitung	"User" und "Password" zum Übertragen von Daten über ftp sind
Spezielle Funktionsvorgänge unter Windows > Dateien	beide festgelegt auf "sysadm". Zum Übertragen von Daten über ftp
direkt unter Windows drucken > Druckbefehle > ftp	geben Sie "sysadm" ein.

Thema	Fehler	Berichtigung
Hardware-Anleitung	5.Entfernen Sie das im Inneren des	5.Entfernen Sie das im Inneren des
Installation des Druckers und der Optionen >	Druckers angebrachte Schutzmaterial.	Druckers angebrachte Schutzmaterial.
Installation des Druckers > Auspacken  Kurzanleitung zur Installation  2.Auspacken	NSS/4	No No.

Die folgenden Beschreibungen treffen auf dieses Gerät nicht zu.

Thema	Fehler
Hardware-Anleitung Anschließen des Druckers > Netzwerkverbindung	Wichtig  Verwenden Sie ein abgeschirmtes Ethemet-Kabel. Nicht abgeschirmte Kabel verursachen elektromagnetische Störungen, die zu Fehlfunktionen führen können.
Hardware-Anleitung Papier und andere Medien > Hinweise zum Papier > Papierarten und sonstige Druckmedien > Papiertypen Hardware-Anleitung Papier und andere Medien > Einlegen von Papier > Einlegen von Papier in den Bypass > Einlegen von Umschlägen	Vermeiden Sie die Verwendung von selbstklebenden Umschlägen. Sie könnten zu einer Fehlfunktion führen.
Hardware-Anleitung Fehlerbehebung > Fehler & Statusmeldungen auf dem Smart Organizing Monitor	Legen Sie das für das Magazin ausgewählte Papierformat ein oder ändern Sie die Papierformateinstellung mit Smart Organizing Monitor.
Software-Anleitung Sonstige Druckvorgänge > Sortieren	Wenn "Automatisch Fortsetzen" beim ersten Satz angewendet wird, wird Sortieren abgebrochen. Wenn ein Seitenvorschub beim ersten Satz angewendet wird, wird Sortieren abgebrochen.  Referenz Weitere Informationen zum Druckverfahren finden Sie in der Hilfe zum Druckertreiber.

1

# Remarques à l'attention des utilisateurs

Ces remarques contiennent des informations complémentaires sur l'utilisation de ce produit et valent pour errata des manuels utilisateur.

Sujet	Correction
Manuel du matériel	La procédure ci-après est requise après l'étape 1 du Manuel du
Connexion de l'imprimante > Connexion	matériel et avant l'étape 1 du Guide d'installation du logiciel pour
réseau	une connexion réseau.
	Une fois cette procédure réalisée, passez à l'étape suivante du
Guide d'installation du logiciel pour une	manuel concerné.
connexion réseau	Utilisateurs de l'UE
1.Impression d'une page de test	
	ATTENTION:
	Il est nécessaire d'utiliser des câbles et des connecteurs correctement
	blindés et mis à la terre pour les connexions à un ordinateur hôte (et/ou à un périphérique) afin de respecter les limites d'émission.
	Utilisateurs aux États-Unis
	ATTENTION:
	Il est nécessaire d'utiliser des câbles et des connecteurs correctement
	blindés et mis à la terre pour les connexions à un ordinateur hôte
	(et/ou à un périphérique) afin de respecter les limites d'émission FCC.
	Tous les utilisateurs
	A) Un noyau de ferrite pour le
	câble d'interface Ethernet est
	fourni avec cet appareil. Faites
	une boucle avec le câble à
	environ 5 cm (2 inch) (1) de
	l'extrémité du câble la plus
	proche de l'appareil. Fixez le
	noyau de ferrite.
	B) Connectez le câble Ethernet
	au port Ethernet qui se trouve à l'arrière de l'imprimante. Connectez
	l'extrémité du câble avec le noyau de ferrite à l'imprimante.  C) Connectez l'autre extrémité du câble au réseau, à l'aide d'un hub
	par exemple.
Manuel du matériel	Lorsque vous avez chargé du papier dans un magasin d'alimentation
Papier et autres supports > Recommandations	papier, définissez toujours le type et le format du papier pour le magasin
papier > Chargement du papier	à l'aide de Smart Organizing Monitor ou Web Image Monitor. Si les
Tar and Samuel and American	paramètres de l'imprimante et du pilote d'impression ne concordent pas,
	les résultats d'impression ne seront peut-être pas ceux escomptés.
Manuel du matériel	Pour l'impression, chargez les enveloppes telles qu'elles sont
Papier et autres supports > Chargement du	conditionnées, avec le rabat ouvert ou fermé. Avant de charger des
papier > Chargement du papier dans le Bypass	enveloppes, assurez-vous qu'elles sont aussi planes que possible.
> Chargement des enveloppes	
Manuel du matériel	Ce produit respecte les normes de sécurité suivantes.
Annexes > Spécifications > Unité principale	Cet appareil est conforme aux directives d'IEC60825-1:2007
Consignes de sécurité Lois et règlementations > Sécurité laser	(EN60825-1:2007) pour les produits laser de classe 1.
Manuel du logiciel	Lorsque [Activer la gestion du mode bidirectionnel] n'est pas
Préparation de l'impression > Configuration	sélectionné, Smart Organizing Monitor ne peut pas être utilisé.
des options de l'imprimante > Si la	Sélectionnez [Activer la gestion du mode bidirectionnel] pour
communication bidirectionnelle est désactivée	utiliser ce logiciel.
Manuel du logiciel	Lorsqu'une erreur d'impression se produit, les paramètres ne
Autres opérations d'impression > Si des erreurs se	peuvent pas être modifiés à l'aide de Smart Organizing Monitor.
produisent avec le format et le type de papier spécifié	
Manuel du logiciel	Indique le nombre total de feuilles imprimées en Recto/Verso.
Surveillance et configuration de l'imprimante	
> Utilisation de Web Image Monitor >	
Vérification de l'Information système >	
Vérification de l'Information de compteur	

5

Manuel du logiciel	Ne spécifiez pas "49999" en plus de "53550" pour [Numéro du
Surveillance et configuration de l'imprimante > Utilisation	port] sous [Paramètres impression réseau].
de Web Image Monitor > Configuration des paramètres	
réseau > Configuration des paramètres d'application réseau	
Manuel du logiciel	Il est possible de définir un nombre entre 1 et 999 pour [Expir. de
Surveillance et configuration de l'imprimante >	délai DNS [sec]].
Utilisation de Web Image Monitor > Configuration des	
paramètres réseau > Configuration des paramètres DNS	
Manuel du logiciel	Lorsque vous imprimez via une connexion USB, il est possible que
Surveillance et configuration de l'imprimante >	les informations d'impression dans Smart Organizing Monitor ne
Utilisation de Smart Organizing Monitor >	soient pas mises à jour correctement.
Affichage de l'état de l'imprimante	
Manuel du logiciel	La syntaxe correcte pour la commande "lpr" est la suivante.
Opérations particulières sous Windows >	c:> lpr -S adresse IP de l'imprimante -P nom de l'imprimante [-o l]
Impression directe de fichiers à partir de	\chemin d'accès\nom du fichier
Windows > Commandes d'impression > lpr	c:> lpr -S nom d'hôte de l'imprimante -P nom de l'imprimante [-o l]
	\chemin d'accès\nom du fichier
Manuel du logiciel	La syntaxe correcte pour la commande "ftp" est la suivante.
Opérations particulières sous Windows >	ftp>put \chemin d'accès\nom du fichier [option]
Impression directe de fichiers à partir de	ftp>mput \chemin d'accès\nom du fichier [\chemin d'accès\nom du
Windows > Commandes d'impression > ftp	fichier]
Manuel du logiciel	"User" et "Password" pour le transfert des données par ftp sont
Opérations particulières sous Windows >	définis sur "sysadm". Pour transférer les données par ftp, saisissez
Impression directe de fichiers à partir de	"sysadm".
Windows > Commandes d'impression > ftp	

# Sujet Manuel du matériel Installation de l'imprimante et des options > Installation de l'imprimante > Retrait de l'emballage Guide d'installation rapide 2. Retrait de l'emballage Correction 5. Retirez le matériel de protection attaché à l'intérieur de l'imprimante.

Les descriptions suivantes ne s'appliquent pas à cet appareil.

Sujet

Manuel du matériel
Connexion de l'imprimante > Connexion réseau

Utilisez un câble Ethernet blindé. Les câbles non blindés créent des interférences électromagnétiques susceptibles de provoquer des dysfonctionnements.

Manuel du matériel

Évitez d'utiliser des enveloppes autocollantes. Elles peuvent entraîner un dysfonctionnement de l'imprimante.

Types de papier et autres supports > Types de papier

Manuel du matériel
Papier et autres supports > Chargement du papier > Chargement du papier dans le Bypass > Chargement des enveloppes

Manuel du matériel

Dépannage > Messages d'erreur & d'état dans le paramètre de format papier à l'aide de Smart Organizing Monitor.

Dépannage > Messages d'erreur & d'état dans Smart Organizing Monitor

Manuel du logiciel Autres opérations d'impression > Assemblage Remarque

Si une reprise automatique est effectuée sur le premier exemplaire, l'assemblage est annulé. Si un saut d'alimentation se produit sur le premier jeu, la fonction

Assemblage est annulée.

Référence

Pour plus d'informations sur la méthode d'impression, consultez le fichier d'aide du pilote d'impression.

6

Design Size: A5 Paper Size: B5

Save Date: 2009/11/16 10:29:00

# Note per gli utenti

Queste note forniscono informazioni aggiuntive sull'uso del prodotto e la correzione di alcuni errori riportati nei manuali di istruzioni per l'uso.

Argomento	Correzione
Guida per l'hardware Collegamento della stampante > Connessione di rete Guida all'installazione del software con una	La seguente procedura deve essere eseguita dopo il punto 1 nella Guida per l'hardware, e prima del punto 1 nella Guida all'installazione del software con una connessione di rete.  Dopo aver eseguito la procedura, continuare al punto successivo specificato in ciascun manuale.
connessione di rete 1.Stampa di una pagina di prova	Utenti dell'UE  AVVERTIMENTO:  Devono essere utilizzati cavi e connettori schermati e messi a terra per le connessioni ad un computer host (e/o periferica), al fine di rispettare i limiti di emissioni.
	Utenti negli USA  AVVERTIMENTO:  Devono essere utilizzati cavi e connettori schermati e messi a terra per le connessioni ad un computer host (e/o periferica), al fine di rispettare i limiti di emissioni FCC.
	Tutti gli utenti  A) Con questa macchina viene fornito un nucleo in ferrite per il cavo di interfaccia Ethernet. Formare un anello con il cavo a circa 5 cm (2 pollici) (①) dall'estremità del cavo da collegare alla macchina. Attaccare il nucleo in ferrite.  B) Collegare il cavo Ethernet alla porta Ethernet situata sul lato posteriore della stampante. C) Collegare l'altra estremità del cavo alla rete, utilizzando per esempio un hub.
Guida per l'hardware Carta e altri supporti > Consigli relativi alla carta > Caricamento della carta	Quando viene caricata carta in un vassoio di alimentazione, è sempre necessario impostare il tipo e il formato della carta per il vassoio utilizzando Smart Organizing Monitor oppure Web Image Monitor. Se le impostazioni della stampante e del driver di stampa non corrispondono, la stampa potrebbe risultare differente da ciò che ci si aspetta.
Guida per l'hardware Carta e altri supporti > Caricamento della carta > Caricamento di carta nel vassoio bypass > Caricamento di buste	Quando si stampa su buste, caricarle così come sono dopo averle estratte dalla confezione, con la linguetta aperta oppure chiusa. Prima di caricare le buste, appiattirle il più possibile.
Guida per l'hardware Appendice > Specifiche > Unità principale Informazioni sulla sicurezza Leggi e normative > Sicurezza sul laser	Questo prodotto è conforme ai seguenti standard di sicurezza. Questa macchina è conforme ai requisiti della normativa IEC60825-1:2007 (EN60825-1:2007) per i prodotti laser di classe 1.
Guida software  Preparazione per la stampa > Esecuzione delle impostazioni delle opzioni per la stampante > Se la comunicazione bidirezionale è disattivata	Quando [Attiva supporto bidirezionale] non è selezionato, Smart Organizing Monitor non può essere utilizzato. Selezionare [Attiva supporto bidirezionale] per usare il software.
Guida software Altre operazioni di stampa > In caso di errori relativi al tipo e al formato carta indicato	Quando si verifica un errore di stampa, le impostazioni non possono essere cambiate utilizzando Smart Organizing Monitor.
Guida software  Monitoraggio e configurazione della stampante > Utilizzo di Web Image Monitor > Controllo delle informazioni di sistema > Controllo delle informazioni del contatore	Mostra il numero totale dei fogli stampati su entrambe le facciate.

7

Guida software	Non specificare "49999" in aggiunta a "53550" per [Porta n.] in
Monitoraggio e configurazione della stampante >	[Impostazioni stampa di rete].
Utilizzo di Web Image Monitor > Configurazione	
delle impostazioni di rete > Configurazione delle	
impostazioni di applicazione rete	
Guida software	Per [Timeout DNS [secondi]] può essere specificato un numero tra
Monitoraggio e configurazione della stampante	1 e 999.
> Utilizzo di Web Image Monitor >	
Configurazione delle impostazioni di rete >	
Configurazione delle impostazioni DNS	
Guida software	Quando si stampa tramite connessione USB, l'informazione della
Monitoraggio e configurazione della stampante	stampante in Smart Organizing Monitor potrebbe non risultare
> Utilizzo dello Smart Organizing Monitor >	correttamente aggiornata.
Visualizzazione dello stato stampante	
Guida software	La sintassi corretta per il comando "lpr" è il seguente:
Operazioni speciali in Windows > Stampa di file	c:\>lpr -S indirizzo IP stampante -P nome stampante [-o l] \percorso\nome file
direttamente da Windows > Comandi di stampa > lpr	c:\>lpr -S nome host stampante -P nome stampante [-o 1] \percorso\nome file
Guida software	La sintassi corretta per il comando "ftp" è la seguente.
Operazioni speciali in Windows > Stampa di file	ftp>put \percorso\nome file [opzione]
direttamente da Windows > Comandi di stampa > ftp	ftp>mput \percorso\nome file [\percorso\nome file]
Guida software	"User" e "Password" per il trasferimento dei dati tramite ftp sono
Operazioni speciali in Windows > Stampa di file	entrambi fissi su "sysadm". Per trasferire dati attraverso ftp, inserire
direttamente da Windows > Comandi di stampa > ftp	"sysadm".

# Argomento Guida per l'hardware Installazione della stampante e delle opzioni > Installazione della stampante > Disimballaggio Guida di installazione rapida 2.Disimballaggio Errore 5.Rimuovere i materiali protettivi presenti all'interno della stampante.

Le seguenti descrizioni non si applicano a questa macchina.

Argomento	Errore
Guida per l'hardware Collegamento della stampante > Connessione	#Importante
di rete	Utilizzare un cavo Ethernet schermato. I cavi non schermati creano interferenze elettromagnetiche in grado di causare malfunzionamenti.
Guida per l'hardware	Non usare buste autoadesive. Potrebbero causare malfunzionamenti
Carta e altri supporti > Consigli relativi alla carta	della stampante.
> Tipi di carta e altri supporti > Tipi di carta	
Guida per l'hardware	
Carta e altri supporti > Caricamento della carta	
> Caricamento di carta nel vassoio bypass >	
Caricamento di buste	
Guida per l'hardware	Caricare la carta del formato selezionato e modificare
Risoluzione dei problemi > Messaggi di errore	l'impostazione del formato carta tramite Smart Organizing Monitor.
e di stato sullo Smart Organizing Monitor	
Guida software	<b>𝒞</b> Nota
Altre operazioni di stampa > Fascicolazione	Se nel primo fascicolo viene eseguita una ripresa automatica, la
	Fascicolazione verrà annullata.
	Se nel primo fascicolo viene eseguito un avanzamento pagina, la
	funzione Fascicolazione verrà annullata.
	Riferimento
	Per ulteriori informazioni sul metodo di stampa, consultare la Guida
	del driver della stampante.

Save Date: 2009/11/16 10:29:00

8

# Bemærkninger til brugerne

Her findes yderligere oplysninger om brugen af dette produkt samt rettelser til nogle af de procedurer, der omtales i vejledningerne.

Emne	Rettelse	
Hardwarevejledning	Følgende procedure er nødvendig efter trin 1 i hardwarevejledningen	
Tilslutning af printeren > Netværksforbindelse  Softwareinstallationsvejledning til netværksforbindelse	og før trin I i softwareinstallationsvejledningen til netværksforbindelsen. Når proceduren er udført, skal du fortsætte til de næste trin i den enkelte vejledning.	
1.Udskrivning af en testside	Brugere i EU	
	FORSIGTIG:  Der skal bruges korrekt afskærmede og jordede kabler og stik ved tilslutning til en værtscomputer (og/eller tilhørende udstyr), hvis emissionskravene skal overholdes.	
	Brugere i USA	
	⚠FORSIGTIG:	
	Der skal bruges korrekt afskærmede og jordede kabler og stik ved tilslutning til en værtscomputer (og/eller tilhørende udstyr), hvis FCC-emissionskravene skal overholdes.	
Hardwarevejledning Papir og andre medier > Anbefalet papir > Ilægning af papir  Hardwarevejledning Papir og andre medier > Ilægning af papir > Ilægning af papir i bypassbakken > Ilægning	Alle brugere  A) Maskinen leveres med en ferritkerne til Ethernet-kablet. Lav en løkke på kablet ca. 5 cm (2 tommer) (①) fra den ende, som tilsluttes maskinen. Fastgør ferritkernen. B) Tilslut Ethernet-kablet til Ethernet-porten bag på printeren. Tilslut kabelenden med ferritkernen til printeren. C) Tilslut den anden ende af kablet til netværket, f.eks. ved hjælp af en hub. Når du har lagt papir i en kassette, skal du altid indstille papirtypen og formatet for kassetten med Smart Organizing Monitor eller Web Image Monitor. Hvis indstillingerne på printeren og printerdriveren ikke er de samme, bliver udskriftsresultaterne måske ikke som forventet.  Når du skal udskrive på kuverter, skal de ilægges i deres oprindelige form - med åben eller lukket flap. Sørg for, at kuverterne er så flade som muligt, før du ilægger dem.	
af kuverter  Hardwarevejledning Appendiks > Specifikationer > Hovedenhed Sikkerhedsoplysninger Love og bestemmelser > Lasersikkerhed	Produktet overholder følgende sikkerhedsstandarder. Maskinen er i overensstemmelse med IEC60825-1:2007 (EN60825-1:2007) for klasse 1-laserprodukter.	
Softwarevejledning Forberedelse til udskrivning > Udførsel af printerindstillinger > Hvis tovejskommunikation er deaktiveret		
Softwarevejledning Andre udskrivningsfunktioner > Hvis der opstår fejl med specificeret papirstørrelse og - type		
Softwarevejledning Overvågning og konfiguration af printeren > Sådan anvender man Web Image Monitor > Tjekker systemoplysninger > Tjekker tælleroplysninger	Viser det samlede antal ark, der er udskrevet på begge sider.	

9

Softwareveiledning	Angiv ikke både "49999" og "53550" som [Portnr.] under	
Overvågning og konfiguration af printeren >	[Indstillinger af netværksudskrivning].	
Sådan anvender man Web Image Monitor >		
Konfiguration af netværksindstillinger >		
Konfiguration af netværksprogramindstillinger		
Softwarevejledning	Der kan angives et tal mellem 1 til 999 for [DNS-timeout	
Overvågning og konfiguration af printeren >	[sekunder]].	
Sådan anvender man Web Image Monitor >		
Konfiguration af netværksindstillinger >		
Konfiguration af DNS-indstillingerne		
Softwarevejledning	Når du udskriver via en USB-forbindelse, opdateres	
Overvågning og konfiguration af printeren > Brug af	f printeroplysningerne i Smart Organizing Monitor muligvis ikk	
Smart Organizing Monitor > Visning af printerstatus	korrekt.	
Softwarevejledning	Den korrekte syntaks for "lpr"-kommandoen er som følger:	
Specielle handlinger under Windows >	c:> lpr -S printerens IP-adresse -P printernavn [-o l] \sti\filnavn	
Udskrivning af filer direkte fra Windows >	c:> lpr -S printerens værtsnavn -P printernavn [-o 1] \sti\filnavn	
Udskrivningskommandoer > lpr		
Softwarevejledning	Den korrekte syntaks for "ftp"-kommandoen er som følger:	
Specielle handlinger under Windows >	> ftp>put \sti\filnavn [option]	
Udskrivning af filer direkte fra Windows >	> ftp>mput \sti\filnavn [\sti\filnavn]	
Udskrivningskommandoer > ftp		
Softwarevejledning	I forbindelse med overførsel af data via ftp er både "User" og	
Specielle handlinger under Windows >	"Password" forudindstillet til "sysadm". Indtast "sysadm" for at	
Udskrivning af filer direkte fra Windows >	overføre data med ftp.	
Udskrivningskommandoer > ftp		

Emne	Fejl	Rettelse
Hardwarevejledning	5.Fjern de beskyttende materialer	5.Fjern de beskyttende materialer
Installation af printeren og ekstraudstyret >	indvending i printeren.	indvending i printeren.
Installation af printeren > Udpakning		
Lyninstallationsvejledning 2.Udpakning	BXXX4	EN TOPO DE LA CONTRACTION DE L

Følgende beskrivelser gælder ikke for denne maskine.

7 5	gende beskriveiser gælder ikke for denne maskine.		
Emne	Fejl		
Hardwarevejledning	<b>₩</b> Vigtigt		
Tilslutning af printeren > Netværksforbindelse	AR VIGUIGE		
	Brug et afskærmet Ethernet-kabel. Uskærmede kabler danner		
	elektromagnetisk interferens, der kan forårsage funktionsfejl.		
Hardwarevejledning	Undgå at anvende selvklæbende kuverter. De kan medføre		
Papir og andre medier > Anbefalet papir >	fejlfunktion på printeren.		
Papirtyper og andre medier > Papirtyper			
Hardwarevejledning			
Papir og andre medier > Ilægning af papir > Ilægning			
af papir i bypassbakken > Ilægning af kuverter			
Hardwarevejledning	Læg papir i den valgte størrelse i bakken, og skift derefter		
Fejlsøgning > Fejl & statusmeddelelse på Smart	indstillinger for papirstørrelsen med Smart Organizing Monitor.		
Organizing Monitor			
Softwarevejledning	<b>∅</b> Bemærk		
Andre udskrivningsfunktioner > Sætvis			
udskrivning	Hvis der bruges Automatisk fortsæt til det første sæt, annulleres Sætvis		
	udskrivning.		
	Hvis der er arkfødning på det første sæt, vil Samordning blive annulleret.		
	Reference		
	Du kan finde flere oplysninger om udskrivningsmetode i hjælpen til		
	printerdriveren.		

10

Page 11 of 32

# Notas para los usuarios

Estas notas ofrecen información adicional sobre el uso del producto y erratas en las explicaciones de las instrucciones.

Asunto	Corrección	
Manual de hardware	Es necesario realizar el siguiente procedimiento después del paso 1	
Conexión de la impresora > Conexión de red	en el Manual de Hardware, y antes del paso 1 en la Guía de	
	instalación de software para conexión en red.	
Guía de instalación de software para	Cuando haya completado este procedimiento, continúe en el paso	
conexión en red	siguiente de cada manual.	
1.Impresión de una página de prueba	Usuarios de la UE	
	⚠PRECAUCIÓN:	
	Hay que utilizar conectores y cables debidamente apantallados y conectados a tierra para las conexiones con el ordenador host (y/o periféricos) para cumplir los límites de emisiones.	
	Usuarios de los EE. UU.	
	⚠PRECAUCIÓN:	
	Hay que utilizar conectores y cables debidamente apantallados y	
	conectados a tierra para las conexiones con el ordenador host (y/o periféricos) para cumplir los límites de emisiones FCC.	
	Todos los usuarios	
	A) Se proporciona un núcleo de	
	ferrita para el cable de interfaz	
	Ethernet con esta máquina.	
	Haga un bucle con el cable de unos 5 cm (2 pulgadas) (1)	
	desde el extremo de la máquina	
	del cable. Coloque el núcleo de	
	ferrita.	
	B) Conecte el cable Ethernet al	
	puerto Ethernet situado en la parte posterior de la impresora.	
	Conecte el extremo del cable con núcleo de ferrita a la impresora.	
	C) Conecte el otro extremo del cable a la red, por ejemplo,	
Manual de hardware	mediante un hub.  Si ha cargado papel en una bandeja fuente de papel, establezca	
Papel y otros soportes > Recomendaciones acerca	siempre el tipo y tamaño del papel para la bandeja con Smart	
del papel > Carga del papel	Organizing Monitor o Web Image Monitor. Si la configuración de la	
	impresora y del driver de impresora no coinciden, puede que los	
	resultados de impresión no sean los deseados.	
Manual de hardware	Al imprimir en sobres, cárguelos como se proporcionan (en el	
Papel y otros soportes > Carga del papel >	paquete), ya sea con las tapas abiertas o cerradas.	
Carga de papel en la bandeja bypass > Carga	Antes de cargar sobres, asegúrese de que están lo más plano	
de sobres Manual de hardware	posible.	
Apéndice > Especificaciones > Unidad principal	Este producto cumple las siguientes normativas de seguridad. La máquina cumple los requisitos de IEC60825-1:2007 (EN60825-	
Información de seguridad	1:2007) para los productos láser de clase 1.	
Leyes y normativas > Seguridad de láser		
Manual de software	Si [Habilitar compatibilidad bidireccional] no está seleccionado,	
Preparativos para imprimir > Configuración de	Smart Organizing Monitor no se puede utilizar. Seleccione	
las opciones de la impresora > Si la	[Habilitar compatibilidad bidireccional] para utilizar el software.	
comunicación bidireccional está desactivada		
Manual de software	Si se produce un error de impresión, la configuración no puede	
Otras operaciones de impresión > Si se producen errores con el tamaño y tipo de papel especificado	cambiarse con Smart Organizing Monitor.	
Manual de software	Muestra el total de hojas impresas por ambas caras.	
Supervisión y configuración de la impresora >	Tracetta er total de nojas impresas por ambas caras.	
Uso de Web Image Monitor > Comprobación		
de la información del sistema > Comprobación		
de la información del sistema > comprobación		

11

Manual de software	No especifique "49999" además de "53550" para [Puerto Nº.] en
Supervisión y configuración de la impresora >	[Config. de impresión de red].
Uso de Web Image Monitor > Ajustes de la	
configuración de red > Ajustes de la	
configuración de la aplicación de red	
Manual de software	Puede especificar un número entre 1 y 999 para [Tiempo espera
Supervisión y configuración de la impresora > Uso	DNS [seg]].
de Web Image Monitor > Ajustes de la configuración	
de red > Ajustes de la configuración DNS	
Manual de software	Si está imprimiendo a través de una conexión USB, la información
Supervisión y configuración de la impresora >	de la impresora de Smart Organizing Monitor puede que no se
Uso de Smart Organizing Monitor > Mostrar el	actualice correctamente.
estado de la impresora	
Manual de software	La sintaxis correcta para el comando "lpr" es la siguiente.
Operaciones especiales en Windows > Imprimir	c:> lpr -S dirección IP de la impresora -P nombre de la impresora [-
archivos directamente desde Windows >	o l] \ruta\nombre de archivo
Comandos de impresión > lpr	c:> lpr -S nombre host de la impresora -P nombre de la impresora [-
	o l] \ruta\nombre de archivo
Manual de software	La sintaxis correcta para el domando "ftp" es la siguiente.
Operaciones especiales en Windows > Imprimir archivos	
directamente desde Windows> Comandos de impresión> ftp	ftp>mput \ruta\nombre del archivo [\ruta\nombre del archivo]
Manual de software	Tanto el "User" como la "Password" para transferir datos mediante
Operaciones especiales en Windows > Imprimir archivos	1 1
directamente desde Windows> Comandos de impresión> ftp	introduzca "sysadm".

Asunto	Error	Corrección
Manual de hardware	5.Retire el material protector colocado	5.Retire el material protector colocado
Instalación de la impresora y las opciones >	en el interior de la impresora.	en el interior de la impresora.
Instalación de la impresora > Desembalaje  Guía de Instalación Rápida  2.Desembalaje		
		0

Las siguientes descripciones no se aplican a esta máquina.

Asunto	Error
Manual de hardware	<b>₩</b> Importante
Conexión de la impresora > Conexión de red	
	Utilice un cable Ethernet protegido. Los cables no protegidos crean interferencias electromagnéticas que pueden provocar un funcionamiento incorrecto.
Manual de hardware	No utilice sobres autoadhesivos. Podrían impedir el funcionamiento
Papel y otros soportes > Recomendaciones acerca del	correcto de la impresora.
papel > Tipos de papel y otros soportes > Tipos de papel	
Manual de hardware	
Papel y otros soportes > Carga del papel > Carga	
de papel en la bandeja bypass > Carga de sobres	
Manual de hardware	Cargue papel del tamaño seleccionado en la bandeja y después
Detección de errores > Mensajes de error y	cambie el ajuste del tamaño del papel con Smart Organizing
estado en Smart Organizing Monitor	Monitor.
Manual de software	<b>𝒞</b> Nota
Otras operaciones de impresión > Clasificar	Si se produce Continuación automática en el primer juego, se
	cancelará la clasificación.
	Si se activa la función de alimentación forzada en el primer juego,
	se cancelará la clasificación.
	Referencia
	Para obtener más información acerca del método de impresión,
	consulte la Ayuda del controlador de la impresora.

12

Design Size : A5 Paper Size : B5

# Opmerkingen voor gebruikers

De onderstaande opmerkingen bevatten aanvullende informatie over het gebruik van dit product en errata voor de beschrijving in de gebruiksaanwijzingen.

Onderwerp	Correctie	
Hardwarehandleiding	De volgende procedure moet uitgevoerd worden ná stap 1 van de	
De printer aansluiten > Netwerkverbinding	Hardwarehandleiding en vóór stap 1 van de Software-	
	installatiehandleiding voor netwerkverbindingen.	
Software-installatiehandleiding voor	Als u deze procedure hebt uitgevoerd, ga dan verder met de	
netwerkverbindingen	volgende stap van elke handleiding.	
1.Een testpagina afdrukken	Gebruikers in de EU	
	<b>⚠</b> VOORZICHTIG:	
	Om aan de uitstootbeperkingen te voldoen, dient u goed beschermde en geaarde kabels en aansluitingen te gebruiken voor verbinding met een hostcomputer (en/of randapparatuur).	
	Gebruikers in de V.S.	
	⚠voorzichtig:	
	Om aan de FCC-uitstootbeperkingen te voldoen, dient u goed beschermde en geaarde kabels en aansluitingen te gebruiken voor verbinding met een hostcomputer (en/of randapparatuur).	
	Alle gebruikers	
	A) Bij dit apparaat wordt een	
	ferrietkern voor de ethernet-	
	interfacekabel geleverd. Maak	
	een lus in de kabel op ongeveer	
	5 cm (2 inch) (1) van het	
	machine-uiteinde van de kabel.	
	Bevestig de ferrietkern.	
	B) Verbind de ethernetkabel	
	met de ethernetpoort aan de	
	achterkant van de printer.	
	Verbind het kabeluiteinde met de ferrietkern aan de printer.  C) Verbind het andere uiteinde van de kabel aan het netwerk,	
	bijvoorbeeld met een hub.	
Hardwarehandleiding	Wanneer u papier in een papierbronlade geplaatst heeft, dient u het	
Papier en andere media > Aanbevelingen voor	papiertype en -formaat voor de lade in te stellen met Smart	
papier > Papier plaatsen	Organizing Monitor of Web Image Monitor. Als de instellingen van	
pupier > 1 upier piamoen	de printer en het printerstuurprogramma niet overeenkomen,	
	kunnen de afdrukresultaten tegenvallen.	
Hardwarehandleiding	Wanneer u op enveloppen afdrukt, dient u ze te plaatsen zoals ze uit	
Papier en andere media > Papier plaatsen >	de verpakking komen; met de flappen open of dicht.	
Papier plaatsen in de handinvoer >	Voordat u de enveloppen plaatst, dient u ervoor te zorgen dat ze zo	
Enveloppen plaatsen	plat mogelijk zijn.	
Hardwarehandleiding	Dit product voldoet aan de volgende veiligheidsvoorschriften.	
Bijlage > Specificaties > Hoofdeenheid	Dit apparaat voldoet aan de vereisten van IEC60825-1:2007	
Veiligheidsinformatie	(EN60825-1:2007) voor laserproducten van klasse 1.	
Wetten en voorschriften > Laserveiligheid		
Softwarehandleiding		
Voorbereiden voor afdrukken > Opties voor de	Wanneer [Ondersteuning in twee richtingen inschakelen] niet	
	geselecteerd is, kan Smart Organizing Monitor niet gebruikt	
printer instellen > Wanneer bidirectionele	geselecteerd is, kan Smart Organizing Monitor niet gebruikt worden. Selecteer [Ondersteuning in twee richtingen inschakelen]	
printer instellen > Wanneer bidirectionele communicatie is uitgeschakeld	geselecteerd is, kan Smart Organizing Monitor niet gebruikt worden. Selecteer [Ondersteuning in twee richtingen inschakelen] om de software te gebruiken.	
printer instellen > Wanneer bidirectionele communicatie is uitgeschakeld Softwarehandleiding	geselecteerd is, kan Smart Organizing Monitor niet gebruikt worden. Selecteer [Ondersteuning in twee richtingen inschakelen] om de software te gebruiken.  Wanneer er een afdrukfout optreedt, kunnen de instellingen niet	
printer instellen > Wanneer bidirectionele communicatie is uitgeschakeld  Softwarehandleiding  Overige afdrukbewerkingen > Wanneer er een fout	geselecteerd is, kan Smart Organizing Monitor niet gebruikt worden. Selecteer [Ondersteuning in twee richtingen inschakelen] om de software te gebruiken.	
printer instellen > Wanneer bidirectionele communicatie is uitgeschakeld  Softwarehandleiding  Overige afdrukbewerkingen > Wanneer er een fout optreedt met het opgegeven papierformaat en -type	geselecteerd is, kan Smart Organizing Monitor niet gebruikt worden. Selecteer [Ondersteuning in twee richtingen inschakelen] om de software te gebruiken.  Wanneer er een afdrukfout optreedt, kunnen de instellingen niet veranderd worden met Smart Organizing Monitor.	
printer instellen > Wanneer bidirectionele communicatie is uitgeschakeld  Softwarehandleiding  Overige afdrukbewerkingen > Wanneer er een fout optreedt met het opgegeven papierformaat en -type  Softwarehandleiding	geselecteerd is, kan Smart Organizing Monitor niet gebruikt worden. Selecteer [Ondersteuning in twee richtingen inschakelen] om de software te gebruiken.  Wanneer er een afdrukfout optreedt, kunnen de instellingen niet	
printer instellen > Wanneer bidirectionele communicatie is uitgeschakeld  Softwarehandleiding  Overige afdrukbewerkingen > Wanneer er een fout optreedt met het opgegeven papierformaat en -type  Softwarehandleiding  De printer controleren en configureren > De	geselecteerd is, kan Smart Organizing Monitor niet gebruikt worden. Selecteer [Ondersteuning in twee richtingen inschakelen] om de software te gebruiken.  Wanneer er een afdrukfout optreedt, kunnen de instellingen niet veranderd worden met Smart Organizing Monitor.	
printer instellen > Wanneer bidirectionele communicatie is uitgeschakeld  Softwarehandleiding  Overige afdrukbewerkingen > Wanneer er een fout optreedt met het opgegeven papierformaat en -type  Softwarehandleiding	geselecteerd is, kan Smart Organizing Monitor niet gebruikt worden. Selecteer [Ondersteuning in twee richtingen inschakelen] om de software te gebruiken.  Wanneer er een afdrukfout optreedt, kunnen de instellingen niet veranderd worden met Smart Organizing Monitor.	

13

Softwarehandleiding	Geef "49999" niet naast "53550" op voor [Poortnr.] onder	
De printer controleren en configureren > De	[Instellingen netwerkafdrukken].	
Web Image Monitor gebruiken >		
Netwerkinstellingen configureren > Instellingen		
netwerktoepassing configureren		
Softwarehandleiding	U kunt een getal tussen 1 en 999 opgeven voor [DNS-time-out	
De printer controleren en configureren > De Web	[seconden]].	
Image Monitor gebruiken > Netwerkinstellingen		
configureren > De DNS-instellingen configureren		
Softwarehandleiding	Wanneer u via een USB-verbinding afdrukt, is de printerinformatie	
De printer controleren en configureren > Smart Organizing	in Smart Organizing Monitor misschien niet goed bijgewerkt.	
Monitor gebruiken > De printerstatus weergeven		
Softwarehandleiding	De juiste syntax voor het "lpr"-commando is als volgt.	
Speciale bewerkingen onder Windows >	c:\>lpr -S [IP-adres van de printer] -P [optie] -o l \pad\best.naam	
Bestanden rechtstreeks vanuit Windows	s c:\>lpr -S [hostnaam van de printer] -P [optie] -o 1 \pad\best.naam	
afdrukken > Afdrukopdrachten > lpr		
Softwarehandleiding	De juiste syntax voor het "ftp"-commando is als volgt.	
Speciale bewerkingen onder Windows >	<pre>&gt; ftp&gt;put \pad\best.naam [optie]</pre>	
Bestanden rechtstreeks vanuit Windows	s ftp>mput \pad\best.naam [\pad\bestandsnaam]	
afdrukken > Afdrukopdrachten > ftp		
Softwarehandleiding	"User" en "Password" voor het verzenden van gegevens via ftp zijn	
Speciale bewerkingen onder Windows >	allebei "sysadm". Om gegevens via ftp te verzenden, voert u	
Bestanden rechtstreeks vanuit Windows	"sysadm" in.	
afdrukken > Afdrukopdrachten > ftp		

Onderwerp	Fout	Correctie
Hardwarehandleiding	5. Verwijder de beschermende materialen	5. Verwijder de beschermende materialen
De printer en opties installeren > De printer	aan de binnenkant van de printer.	aan de binnenkant van de printer.
installeren > Verpakking verwijderen	The	Pin
Verkorte Installatiehandleiding 2.Verpakking verwijderen	80014	83780

De volgende omschrijvingen zijn niet van toepassing voor dit apparaat. Onderwerp Fout Hardwarehandleiding #Belangrijk De printer aansluiten > Netwerkverbinding Gebruik de beveiligde Ethernet-kabel. Onbeschermde kabels veroorzaken elektromagnetische storing waardoor het apparaat defecten kan gaan vertonen. Hardwarehandleiding Gebruik geen zelfklevende enveloppen. Deze kunnen storingen van Papier en andere media > Aanbevelingen voor papier de printer veroorzaken. > Soorten papier en overige media > Papiertypes Hardwarehandleiding Papier en andere media > Papier plaatsen > Papier plaatsen in de handinvoer > Enveloppen plaatsen Hardwarehandleiding Plaats papier van het geselecteerde formaat in de lade en wijzig dan Problemen oplossen > Fout & Statusmeldingen de instelling voor het papierformaat met behulp van Smart Organizing Monitor. op de Smart Organizing Monitor Softwarehandleiding **Opmerking** Overige afdrukbewerkingen > Sorteren Wanneer Automatisch doorgaan plaats vindt voor de eerste set, wordt Sorteren geannuleerd. Wanneer er papierdoorvoer plaatsvindt bij de eerste set, dan wordt Sorteren geannuleerd. Verwijzing Raadpleeg voor meer informatie over de afdrukmethode de Helpfunctie van het stuurprogramma.

1 /

Page 15 of 32

# Merknader for brukere

Disse merknadene gir tilleggsinformasjon om bruk av dette produktet og rettelser i brukerveiledningene.

	Rettelse
Emne Maskinvareveiledning	
Koble til skriveren > Nettverkstilkobling  Programvareinstallasjonsveiledning for nettverkstilkobling	Fremgangsmåten nedenfor må følges etter trinn 1 i Maskinvareveiledning, og før trinn 1 i Programvareinstallasjonsveiledning for nettverkstilkobling. Etter at du har gjennomført disse instruksjonene, fortsetter du til neste trinn i veiledningene.
1.Skrive ut én testside	Brukere i EU
	<b>⚠</b> FORSIKTIG:
	Skjermede og jordede kabler og koblinger må brukes for tilkoblinger til en vertsdatamaskin (og/eller ekstern) for å overholde utslippsgrensene.
	Brukere i USA  FORSIKTIG:
	Skjermede og jordede kabler og koblinger må brukes for tilkoblinger til en vertsdatamaskin (og/eller ekstern) for å overholde FCC-utslippsgrensene.
	Alle brukere
	A) En ferrittkjerne for Ethernet-kabelen leveres med maskinen. Lag en sløyfe på kabelen ca. 5 cm (2 tommer) (①) fra maskinenden av kabelen. Koble til ferrittkjernen. B) Koble Ethernet-kabelen til Ethernet-porten på baksiden av skriveren.
	Koble kabelenden med ferrittkjernen til skriveren.  C) Koble den andre enden av kabelen til nettverket, for eksempel ved hjelp av en hub.
Maskinvareveiledning	Når du har lagt papir i magasinet, angi alltid papirtypen og formatet
Papir og annet utskriftsmateriale > Papiranbefalinger > Legge i papir	for magasinet ved hjelp av Smart Organizing Monitor eller Web Image Monitor. Hvis skriver- og skriverdriverinnstillingene ikke samsvarer, blir kanskje ikke utskriftsresultatet som forventet.
Maskinvareveiledning Papir og annet utskriftsmateriale > Legge i papir > Mate inn papir ved hjelp av multiarkmateren > Legge i konvolutter	Konvolutter med åpen klaff må skrives ut med klaffen åpen, og konvolutter med lukket klaff må skrives ut med klaffen lukket. Før du legger i konvolutter, sørg for at de ligger så flatt som mulig.
Maskinvareveiledning Tillegg > Spesifikasjoner > Hovedenhet Sikkerhetsinformasjon Lover og regler > Laser-sikkerhet	Dette produktet samsvarer med følgende sikkerhetsstandarder.  Denne maskinen samsvarer med kravene i IEC60825-1:2007 (EN60825-1:2007) for laserprodukter klasse 1.
Programvareveiledning Klargjøre for utskrift > Angi innstillinger for tilleggsutstyr for skriveren > Hvis toveiskommunikasjon er deaktivert	Når [Aktiver toveis støtte] ikke er valgt kan ikke Smart Organizing Monitor brukes. Velg [Aktiver toveis støtte] for å bruke programvaren.
Programvareveiledning Andre utskriftshandlinger > Hvis det oppstår feil med det spesifiserte papirformatet og typen	Når det oppstår en skriverfeil kan ikke innstillingene endres ved hjelp av Smart Organizing Monitor.
Programvareveiledning Overvåke og konfigurere skriveren > Bruk av Web Image Monitor > Kontroll av systeminformasjonen > Kontroll av telleverkinformasjon	Viser totalt antall ark som er skrevet ut med tosidig.
Programvareveiledning Overvåke og konfigurere skriveren > Bruk av Web Image Monitor > Konfigurere nettverksinnstillinger > Konfigurere nettverksapplikasjonsinnstillinger	Ikke angi "4999" og "53550" for [Port #] under [Innstillinger for nettverksutskrift].

15

Programvareveiledning	Det kan angis et tall mellom 1 og 999 for [DNS-tidsavbrudd	
Overvåke og konfigurere skriveren > Bruk av	[sekunder]]	
Web Image Monitor > Konfigurere		
nettverksinnstillinger > Konfigurere DNS-		
innstillingene		
Programvareveiledning	Når du skriver ut via USB oppdateres kanskje ikke	
Overvåke og konfigurere skriveren > Bruke	skriverinformasjonen i Smart Organizing Monitor riktig.	
Smart Organizing Monitor > Vise skriverstatus		
Programvareveiledning	Riktig syntaks for "lpr"-kommandoen er som følger.	
Spesielle Windows-operasjoner > Skrive ut filer	c:> lpr -S skriverens adresse -P skrivernavn [-o l] \bane\filnavn	
direkte fra Windows > Utskriftskommandoer > lpr	c:> lpr -S skriverens vertsnavn -P skrivernavn [-o l] \bane\filnavn	
Programvareveiledning	Riktig syntaks for "ftp"-kommandoen er som følger:	
Spesielle Windows-operasjoner > Skrive ut filer	r ftp>put \bane\filnavn [alternativ]	
direkte fra Windows > Utskriftskommandoer > ftp	ftp>mput \bane\filnavn [\bane\filnavn]	
Programvareveiledning	"User" og "Password" for overføring av data via ftp er satt til	
Spesielle Windows-operasjoner > Skrive ut filer	"sysadm". For å overføre data via ftp, angi "sysadm".	
direkte fra Windows > Utskriftskommandoer > ftp		

Emne	Feil	Rettelse
Maskinvareveiledning	5.Fjern det beskyttende materialet	5.Fjern det beskyttende materialet
Installere skriveren og tilleggsutstyr > Installere	som er festet innvendig i maskinen.	som er festet innvendig i maskinen.
skriveren > Pakke ut maskinen	The same	
Hurtigveiledning for installasjon		
2.Pakke ut maskinen		

Følgende beskrivelser gjelder ikke for denne maskinen.

Emne	Feil	
Maskinvareveiledning Koble til skriveren > Nettverkstilkobling	**Viktig	
Those ar sair other a recommendating	Bruk en skjermet Ethernet-kabel. Uskjermede kabler skaper elektromagnetisk interferens som kan føre til funksjonsfeil.	
Maskinvareveiledning	Unngå å bruke selvklebende konvolutter. De kan forårsake feil på	
Papir og annet utskriftsmateriale >	skriveren.	
Papiranbefalinger > Papirtyper og andre		
utskriftsmedier > Papirtyper		
Maskinvareveiledning		
Papir og annet utskriftsmateriale > Legge i		
papir > Mate inn papir ved hjelp av		
multiarkmateren > Legge i konvolutter		
Maskinvareveiledning	Legg valgt papirformat i magasinet, og endre	
Feilsøking > Feil- & statusmeldinger på Smart	papirformatinnstillingen med Smart Organizing Monitor.	
Organizing Monitor		
Programvareveiledning	<b>Ø</b> Merk	
Andre utskriftshandlinger > Sortere	Hvis automatisk fortsettelse inntreffer på det første settet, avbrytes	
	Sortering.	
	Hvis papirfremmating inntreffer på det første settet, avbrytes	
	Sortering.	
	Henvisning	
	Hvis du vil vite mer om utskriftsmetoder, kan du se i hjelpefilen for	
	skriverdriveren.	

Save Date: 2009/11/16 10:29:00

# Notas para os utilizadores

Estas notas fornecem informações adicionais sobre a utilização deste produto e a errata para a descrição nos manuais de operação.

Tónico	Correcção	
Tópico Guia de Hardware	,	
Ligar a Impressora > Ligação de rede  Guia de Instalação de Software para Ligação de Rede	O seguinte procedimento é necessário após o Passo 1 no Guia de Hardware e antes do Passo 1 no Guia de Instalação de Software para Ligação de Rede.  Após este procedimento, avance para o passo seguinte em cada manual.	
1.Imprimir uma Página de Teste	Utilizadores na União Europeia	
	CUIDADO:  Têm de ser usados cabos com o conveniente revestimento e ligação à terra para ligar ao host (e/ou periféricos) de modo a cumprir os limites de emissões.	
	Utilizadores no Estados Unidos da América	
	CUIDADO: Têm de ser usados cabos com o conveniente revestimento e ligação à terra para ligar ao host (e/ou periféricos) de modo a cumprir os limites de emissões FCC.	
	Todos os Utilizadores  A) É fornecido com este equipamento um núcleo de ferrite para o cabo de interface Ethernet. Faça uma volta no cabo a cerca de 5 cm (2 polegadas) (①) da extremidade do cabo do lado do equipamento. Fixe o núcleo de ferrite.  B) Ligue o cabo Ethernet à porta Ethernet localizada na retaguarda da impressora.  Ligue a extremidade do cabo com o núcleo de ferrite à impressora.  C) Ligue a outra extremidade do cabo à rede, por exemplo, usando um hub.	
Guia de Hardware Papel e outros suportes > Recomendações de Papel > Colocar papel	Quando tiver colocado papel numa bandeja, defina sempre o tipo e o formato do papel para a bandeja com o Smart Organizing Monitor ou o Web Image Monitor. Se as definições na impressora e no driver de impressão não corresponderem, os resultados de impressão podem não sair como esperado.	
Guia de Hardware  Papel e outros suportes > Colocar papel > Colocar papel na bandeja de alimentação manual > Colocar envelopes  Guia de Hardware  Anexo > Especificações > Unidade principal Informações de Segurança  Leis e Regulamentos > Segurança com o Laser	Envelopes com abas abertas devem ser impressos com as abas abertas e envelopes com abas fechadas devem ser impressos com as abas fechadas.  Antes de colocar envelopes, confirme se estão devidamente lisos.  Este produto cumpre com as seguintes normas de segurança.  Este equipamento cumpre com os requisitos da norma IEC60825-1:2007 (EN60825-1:2007) para produtos laser de classe 1.	
Guia de Software  Preparar para impressão > Definir as opções para a impressora > Se a comunicação bidireccional for desactivada  Guia de Software	Quando [Activar suporte bidireccional] não estiver seleccionado, não é possível utilizar Smart Organizing Monitor. Seleccione [Activar suporte bidireccional] para utilizar o software.  Quando ocorrer um erro de impressão, não é possível alterar as	
Outras operações de impressão > Se ocorrerem erros com o formato e o tipo do papel especificado	definições com o Smart Organizing Monitor.	
Guia de Software  Monitorizar e configurar a impressora > Usar o  Web Image Monitor > Verificar a informação de sistema > Verificar a informação do contador	Apresenta o número total de folhas impressas em ambos os lados.	

17

Guia de Software	Não especifique "49999" juntamente com "53550" para [Porta No.]	
Monitorizar e configurar a impressora > Usar o Web		
Image Monitor > Configurar as definições de rede >		
Configurar as definições de aplicação de rede		
Guia de Software	É possível especificar um número entre 1 e 999 para [Tempo Limite	
Monitorizar e configurar a impressora > Usar o	do DNS [segundos]].	
Web Image Monitor > Configurar as definições		
de rede > Configurar as definições DNS		
Guia de Software	Se imprimir via ligação USB, as informações da impressora no	
Monitorizar e configurar a impressora > Utilizar o Smart	Smart Organizing Monitor podem não ser actualizadas	
Organizing Monitor > Visualizar o estado da impressora	a correctamente.	
Guia de Software	A sintaxe correcta para o comando "lpr" é a seguinte.	
Operações especiais no Windows > Imprimir	c:> lpr -S endereço IP da impressora -P nome da impressora [-o 1]	
ficheiros directamente a partir do Windows >	\caminho\nome do ficheiro	
Comandos de impressão > lpr	c:> lpr -S nome do host da impressora -P nome da impressora [-o l]	
	\caminho\nome do ficheiro	
Guia de Software	A sintaxe correcta para o comando "ftp" é a seguinte.	
Operações especiais no Windows > Imprimir		
ficheiros directamente a partir do Windows >	ftp>mput \caminho\nome do ficheiro [\caminho\nome do ficheiro]	
Comandos de impressão > ftp		
Guia de Software	"User" e "Password" para a transferência de dados por ftp estão	
Operações especiais no Windows > Imprimir	fixos como "sysadm". Para transferir dados por ftp, introduza	
ficheiros directamente a partir do Windows >	> "sysadm".	
Comandos de impressão > ftp		

Tópico	Erro	Correcção
Guia de Hardware	5.Remova os materiais de protecção	5.Remova os materiais de protecção
Instalar a impressora e opcionais > Instalar a	colocados no interior da impressora.	colocados no interior da impressora.
impressora > Desembalar  Guia de Instalação Rápida  2.Desembalar		

As seguintes descrições não se aplicam a este equipamento.

Tópico	Erro
Guia de Hardware	#Importante
Ligar a Impressora > Ligação de rede	
	Utilize cabos Ethernet blindados. Os cabos não blindados criam
G 1 1 77 1	interferência electromagnética que pode causar avarias.
Guia de Hardware	Evite utilizar envelopes autocolantes. Podem provocar disfunções
Papel e outros suportes > Recomendações de Papel > Tipos	na impressora.
de Papel e Outros Suportes de Impressão > Tipos de papel	
Guia de Hardware	
Papel e outros suportes > Colocar papel > Colocar papel	
na bandeja de alimentação manual > Colocar envelopes	
Guia de Hardware	Coloque papel na bandeja de papel do formato seleccionado e altere
Rozwiązywanie problemów > Erros e Mensagens	a definição do formato de papel com o Smart Organizing Monitor.
de Estado no Smart Organizing Monitor	
Guia de Software	<b>𝒯</b> Nota
Outras operações de impressão > Agrupar	Se a opção Continuar automaticamente ocorrer no primeiro
	conjunto, a função Agrupar será cancelada.
	Se ocorrer um avanço de página no primeiro conjunto, a função
	Agrupar será cancelada.
	Referência
	Para mais informações sobre o método de impressão, consulte a
	Ajuda do controlador de impressora.

18

Design Size : A5 Paper Size : B5

Page 19 of 32

# Huomautuksia käyttäjille

Näissä huomautuksissa on lisätietoa tuotteen käyttämisestä ja korjauksia käyttöoppaiden kuvauksiin.

Aihe	Korjaus	
Laitteisto-opas	Seuraavat toimenpiteet tulee tehdä Laitteisto-oppaan kohdan	
Tulostimen kytkeminen > Verkkoyhteys	1 jälkeen ja ennen Ohjelmiston asennus verkkoyhteyttä varten	
	-oppaan kohtaa 1.	
Ohjelmiston asennus verkkoyhteyttä varten	Suoritettuasi nämä toimenpiteet jatka kummankin ohjeen seuraavan	
1.Testisivun tulostaminen	kohdan mukaan.	
	EU-käyttäjät	
	<b>⚠</b> TÄRKEÄÄ:	
	Isäntäkoneiden (ja/tai lisälaitteiden) yhteyksiin käytettyjen	
	kaapeleiden ja liitinten pitää olla asianmukaisesti suojattu ja	
	maadoitettu, jotta pysytään säteilylle asetetuissa rajoissa.	
	Käyttäjät USA:ssa	
	<b>⚠TÄRKEÄÄ</b> :	
	Isäntäkoneiden (ja/tai lisälaitteiden) yhteyksiin käytettyjen	
	kaapeleiden ja liitinten pitää olla asianmukaisesti suojattu ja	
	maadoitettu, jotta pysytään FCC:n säteilylle asettamissa rajoissa.	
	Kaikki käyttäjät	
	A) Ethernet-kaapeliin liitettävä	
	ferriittiydin toimitetaan laitteen	
	mukana. Tee kaapeliin silmukka noin 5 cm päähän laitteesta	
	(①). Liitä ferriittiydin.	
	B) Liitä Ethernet-kaapeli laitteen	
	takaosassa olevaan Ethernet-	
	porttiin.	
	Liitä kaapeli ferriittiytimen kanssa	
	tulostimeen.	
	C) Liitä kaapelin toinen pää verkkoon, esimerkiksi käyttämällä jakajaa.	
Laitteisto-opas	Kun olen lisännyt paperia paperikasettiin, muista aina asettaa	
Paperi ja muut tulostusmateriaalit >	paperin tyyppi ja koko käyttämällä Smart Organizing Monitoria tai	
Paperisuositukset > Paperin asettaminen	Web Image Monitoria. Jos tulostimen ja tulostinohjaimen asetukset eivät täsmää, tulosteet saattavat tulostua väärin.	
Laitteisto-opas	Kirjekuoret, jotka tulevat pakkauksesta läpät auki, asetetaan	
Paperi ja muut tulostusmateriaalit > Paperin	tulostimeen läpät auki. Kirjekuoret, jotka tulevat pakkauksesta läpät	
asettaminen > Paperin asettaminen	kiinni, asetetaan tulostimeen läpät kiinni. Varmista, että kirjekuoret	
ohisyöttötasoon > Kirjekuorien asettaminen	ovat mahdollisimman litteitä, ennen kuin asetat ne tulostimeen.	
Laitteisto-opas	Tämä tuote täyttää seuraavat turvallisuusvaatimukset.	
Liite > Tekniset tiedot > Pääyksikkö	Laite täyttää IEC60825-1:2007 (EN60825-1:2007) -vaatimukset	
Turvallisuustiedot	luokan 1 laserlaitteelle.	
Lait ja säädökset > Laserturvallisuus	Was fix-tain-matricular table 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	
Ohjelmisto-opas Tulostamisen valmistelu > Tulostimen	Kun [Kaksisuuntaisuuden tuki] ei ole valittuna, Smart Organizing	
Tulostamisen valmistelu > Tulostimen lisäasetusten valitseminen > Jos	Monitoria ei voi käyttää. Valitse [Kaksisuuntaisuuden tuki] käyttääksesi sovellusta.	
kaksisuuntainen yhteys ei ole käytössä	naj manbosi 50 voitubili.	
Ohjelmisto-opas	Jos tapahtuu tulostusvirhe, asetuksia ei voi muuttaa Smart	
Muut tulostustoiminnot > Jos määritetyllä	Organizing Monitorissa.	
paperikoolla ja -tyypillä tapahtuu virhe		
Ohjelmisto-opas	Näyttää kaksipuoleisten tulosteiden kokonaismäärän.	
Tulostimen valvonta ja määritykset > Web Image		
Monitorin käyttäminen > Järjestelmätietojen		
tarkistaminen > Laskurin tietojen tarkistaminen	Vin and the HEGGEON At all the Heggeon was ED.	
Ohjelmisto-opas	Älä määritä "53550":n lisäksi "49999":ää [Portin nro] -kenttään	
Tulostimen valvonta ja määritykset > Web Image Monitorin käyttäminen >	kohdassa [Verkkoon skannauksen asetukset]	
Image Monitorin käyttäminen > Verkkoasetusten määrittäminen >		
Verkkosovelluksen asetusten määrittäminen		
	10	

19

Ohjelmisto-opas	[DNS-odotusaika [sekuntia]] -kohtaan voidaan määrittää aika	
Tulostimen valvonta ja määritykset > Web	väliltä 1 - 999 sekuntia.	
Image Monitorin käyttäminen >		
Verkkoasetusten määrittäminen > DNS-		
asetusten määrittäminen		
Ohjelmisto-opas	Kun tulostat käyttäen USB-yhteyttä, tulostimen tiedot Smart	
Tulostimen valvonta ja määritykset > Smart	Organizing Monitorissa eivät välttämättä päivity oikein.	
Organizing Monitorin käyttäminen >		
Tulostimen tilan näyttäminen		
Ohjelmisto-opas	"lpr"-komennon oikea syntaksi on seuraava:	
Erityistoimenpiteet Windowsissa > Tiedostojen	c:> lpr -S tulostimen IP-osoite -P tulostimen nimi [-o 1]	
tulostaminen suoraan Windowsista >	\polku\tiedostonimi	
Tulostuskomennot > lpr	c:> lpr -S tulostimen isäntänimi -P tulostimen nimi [-o 1]	
	\polku\tiedostonimi	
Ohjelmisto-opas	"ftp"-komennon oikea syntaksi on seuraava:	
Erityistoimenpiteet Windowsissa > Tiedostojen	ftp>put \polku\tiedostonimi [optio]	
tulostaminen suoraan Windowsista >	ftp>mput \polku\tiedostonimi [\polku\tiedostonimi]	
Tulostuskomennot > ftp		
Ohjelmisto-opas	Tiedon siirtämiseen ftp:n kautta tarvittava "User" ja "Password"	
Erityistoimenpiteet Windowsissa > Tiedostojen	n ovat molemmat "sysadm". Siirtääksesi tietoa käyttämällä ftp:tä	
tulostaminen suoraan Windowsista >	syötä "sysadm".	
Tulostuskomennot > ftp		

Aihe	Virhe	Korjaus
Laitteisto-opas	5.Poista tulostimen sisäpuolelle	5.Poista tulostimen sisäpuolelle
Tulostimen ja lisävarusteiden asentaminen >	kiinnitetty suojamateriaali.	kiinnitetty suojamateriaali.
Tulostimen asentaminen > Pakkauksen purkaminen  Pika-asennusopas 2.Pakkauksen purkaminen	DESCRIPTION OF THE PROPERTY OF	DE 15/100

Seuraavat kuvaukset eivät koske tätä laitetta.

Aihe	Virhe
Laitteisto-opas Tulostimen kytkeminen > Verkkoyhteys	Tärkeää  Käytä suojattua Ethernet-kaapelia. Suojaamattomat kaapelit aiheuttavat sähkömagneettisia häiriöitä, jotka voivat aiheuttaa toimintahäiriön.
Laitteisto-opas       Paperi ja muut tulostusmateriaalit >       Paperisuositukset > Paperityypit ja muut tulostusmateriaalit > Paperityypit       Laitteisto-opas       Paperi ja muut tulostusmateriaalit > Paperin asettaminen > Paperin asettaminen ohisyöttötasoon > Kirjekuorien asettaminen	Vältä itsestään liimautuvien kirjekuorien käyttöä. Ne saattavat johtaa tulostimen toimintahäiriöihin.
Laitteisto-opas Vianmääritys > Smart Organizing Monitorin virhe - ja tilaviestit	Aseta valitunkokoista paperia kasettiin ja muuta sitten paperikoon asetus käyttämällä Smart Organizing Monitor.
Ohjelmisto-opas Muut tulostustoiminnot > Lajittelu	Huom.  Jos ensimmäisen tulostussarjan aikana suoritetaan automaattinen jatkaminen, lajittelu keskeytyy.  Jos ensimmäisen tulostussarjan aikana suoritetaan sivunsiirto, lajittelu keskeytyy.  Viite  Katso lisätietoja tulostustavoista tulostinohjaimen ohjetiedostosta.

20

Design Size : A5 Paper Size : B5

Page 21 of 32

# Information till användare

Följande är tilläggsinformation om hur den här produkten ska användas samt rättelse av beskrivningen i användarhandböckerna.

anvandarnandbockerna.	Bättalaa
Amne Handbok för maskinvara	Rättelse
Ansluta skrivaren > Nätverksanslutning  Guide till mjukvaruinstallation för nätverksanslutning  1.Skriva ut en provsida	Följande moment krävs efter steg 1 i Handbok för maskinvara samt före steg 1 i Guide till mjukvaruinstallation för nätverksanslutning. Fortsätt till nästa steg i respektive handbok när du har genomfört det här momentet.  Användare inom EU  FÖRSIKTIGT: Ordentligt isolerade jordade kablar och anslutningar måste användas för anslutning till en värddator (och/eller kringutrustning) för att tillmötesgå utsläppsgränserna.  Användare i USA  FÖRSIKTIGT: Ordentligt isolerade jordade kablar och anslutningar måste användas för anslutning till en värddator (och/eller kringutrustning) för att tillmötesgå FCC:s utsläppsgränser.
	Alla användare  A) En ferritkärna till ethernet-kabeln medföljer maskinen. Gör en ögla på kabeln, omkring 5 cm (2 tum) (①) från maskinändan på kabeln. Sätt fast ferritkärnan.  B) Anslut ethernet-kabeln till ethernet-porten som finns på skrivarens baksida.  Anslut kabeln med ferritkärnan mot skrivaren.  C) Anslut den andra änden av kabeln till nätverket, använd t.ex. en hubb.
Handbok för maskinvara Papper och andra media > Rekommenderat papper > Fylla på papper	När du har fyllt på med papper i en kassett, se till att du alltid anger papperstyp och -format för den kassetten med Smart Organizing Monitor eller Web Image Monitor. Om inte skrivarens och drivrutinens inställningar stämmer överens kanske utskriftsresultatet inte blir som väntat.
Handbok för maskinvara Papper och andra media > Fylla på papper > Fylla på papper i sidoinmatningsfacket > Fylla på kuvert	Vid utskrift på kuvert, fyll på kuverten som de levereras (i förpackningen) antingen med flikarna ovikta eller med flikarna vikta. Innan du fyller på med kuvert ska du se till att de är så tillplattade som möjligt.
Handbok för maskinvara Bilaga > Specifikationer > Huvudenhet Säkerhetsinformation Lagar och bestämmelser > Lasersäkerhet	Den här produkten följer säkerhetsnormerna nedan. Den här maskinen möter kraven i IEC60825-1:2007 (EN60825-1:2007) för laserprodukter, klass 1.
Handbok för programvara Förbereda för utskrift > Göra tillvalsinställningar för skrivaren > Om dubbelriktad kommunikation är frånkopplad	Om [Aktivera stöd för dubbelriktad kommunikation] inte har valts kan inte Smart Organizing Monitor användas. Välj [Aktivera stöd för dubbelriktad kommunikation] för att använda mjukvaran.
Handbok för programvara Övrig utskriftshantering > Om fel uppstår med det angivna pappersformatet och typen	När ett utskriftsfel inträffar kan inte inställningarna ändras med Smart Organizing Monitor.
Handbok för programvara Övervaka och konfigurera skrivaren > Använd Web Image Monitor > Kontrollera systeminformationen > Kontrollera räknarinformationen	Visar det totala antalet ark som skrivits ut dubbelsidigt.

21

Handbok för programvara	Ange inte "49999" som tillägg till "53550" som [Port #] under	
Övervaka och konfigurera skrivaren > Använd	[Inställningar nätverksskrivning].	
Web Image Monitor > Konfigurera	[mstammgar natverksskrivning].	
nätverksinställningar > Konfigurera		
nätverksapplikationsinställningar		
Handbok för programvara	Ett nummer mellan 1 och 999 kan anges för [DNS timeout	
Övervaka och konfigurera skrivaren > Använd Web	[sekunder]].	
	[sekunder]].	
Image Monitor > Konfigurera nätverksinställningar >		
Konfigurera DNS-inställningarna	No. 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	
Handbok för programvara	När du skriver ut via en USB-anslutning kanske inte	
Övervaka och konfigurera skrivaren > Använda	skrivarinformationen uppdateras korrekt i Smart Organizing	
Smart Organizing Monitor > Visa skrivarens status	Monitor.	
Handbok för programvara	Den rätta syntaxen för "lpr"-kommandot är som följer.	
Speciella hanteringar i Windows > Skriva ut	c:> lpr -S skrivarens IP-adress -P skrivarnamn [-o 1]	
filer direkt från Windows > Skriva ut	\sökväg\filnamn	
kommandon > lpr	c:> lpr -S skrivarens värdnamn -P skrivarnamn [-o 1]	
•	\sökväg\filnamn	
Handbok för programvara	Den rätta syntaxen för "ftp"-kommandot är som följer.	
Speciella hanteringar i Windows > Skriva ut	ftp>put \sökväg\filnamn [alternativet]	
filer direkt från Windows > Skriva ut	ftp>mput \sökväg\filnamn [\sökväg\filnamn]	
kommandon > ftp		
Handbok för programvara	"User" och "Password" för att överföra data via ftp:n är båda	
Speciella hanteringar i Windows > Skriva ut	fastställda till "sysadm". För att överföra data via ftp, ange	
filer direkt från Windows > Skriva ut	"sysadm".	
kommandon > ftp		

Ämne	Fel	Rättelse
Handbok för maskinvara	5.Ta bort skyddsmaterialet som är	5.Ta bort skyddsmaterialet som är
Installera skrivaren och tillval > Installera	fastsatt på skrivarens insida.	fastsatt på skrivarens insida.
skrivaren > Packa upp		
Handbok för snabbinstallation 2.Packa upp	BADDA 6	DO BOTON

Följande beskrivningar gäller inte för den här maskinen.

Orjande beskrivningar ganer me for den nar maskinen.	
Amne	Fel
Handbok för maskinvara	<b>₩</b> Viktigt
Ansluta skrivaren > Nätverksanslutning	
	Använd en skärmad Ethernet-kabel. Ej skärmade kablar skapar
	elektromagnetisk störning som kan orsaka fel.
Handbok för maskinvara	Undvik att använda självhäftande kuvert. De kan orsaka fel i
Papper och andra media > Rekommenderat papper	skrivaren.
> Papperstyper och andra medier > Papperstyper	
Handbok för maskinvara	
Papper och andra media > Fylla på papper > Fylla	
på papper i sidoinmatningsfacket > Fylla på kuvert	
Handbok för maskinvara	Fyll på papper av angivet format i kassetten och ändra sedan
Felsökning > Fel- & statusmeddelanden i Smart	pappersformatinställningen med hjälp av Smart Organizing Monitor.
Organizing Monitor	
Handbok för programvara	<b>𝒯</b> Obs
Övrig utskriftshantering > Sortera	
	Sorteringen avbryts om Automatisk fortsättning tillämpas på den
	första uppsättningen.
	Sorteringen avbryts om sidmatning tillämpas på den första
	uppsättningen.
	Referens
	Mer information om utskriftsmetoder finns i skrivardrivrutinens hjälp.

22

# Poznámky pro uživatele

Tyto poznámky poskytují doplňkové informace o používání tohoto produktu a seznam chyb pro popis v obslužných manuálech.

Téma	Oprava	
Hardwarová příručka	Následující postup je nutný po kroku 1 v Hardwarové příručce a	
Připojení tiskárny > Zapojení do sítě  Softwarový průvodce instalací pro síťové	před krokem 1 v Softwarovém průvodci instalací pro síťové připojení. Po provedení tohoto postupu pokračujte k dalšímu kroku každé	
připojení  1. Tisk testovací stránky	příručky.	
1.11sk testovaci stranky	Uživatelé v EU	
	⚠výstraha:	
	Aby bylo dosaženo emisních limitů, musí být použity pro připojení k hostitelským počítačům (a/nebo periferiím) správně stíněné a uzemněné kabely a konektory.	
	Uživatelé v USA  ⚠VÝSTRAHA: Aby bylo dosaženo emisních limitů FCC, musí být použity pro připojení k hostitelským počítačům (a/nebo periferiím) správně stíněné a uzemněné kabely a konektory.	
	Všichni uživatelé A) Součástí tohoto zařízení je feritové jádro pro kabel rozhraní Ethernet. Udělejte v kabelu smyčku asi 5 cm (2 palce) (①) od konce kabelu od zařízení. Připevněte feritové jádro. B) Připojte Ethernetový kabel k Ethernetovému portu, který je umístěn na zadní straně tiskárny. Připojte konec kabelu s feritovým jádrem k tiskárně. C) Připojte druhý konec kabelu k síti, například pomocí hubu.	
Hardwarová příručka Papír a další média > Doporučení pro práci s papírem > Vkládání papíru	Pokud jste doplnili papír ve vstupním zásobníku papíru, nastavte vždy typ a formát papíru pro zásobník pomocí aplikace Smart Organizing Monitor nebo Web Image Monitor. Nesouhlasí-li nastavení tiskárny a ovladače tiskárny, nemusí být výsledky tisku dle očekávání.	
Hardwarová příručka Papír a další média > Vkládání papíru > Vkládání papíru do bočního zásobníku > Vkládání obálek	Při tisku na obálky je vložte tak, jak jsou připraveny (v balení), buď s otevřenými nebo zavřenými klopami. Před doplněním obálek je stiskněte tak, aby byly maximálně ploché.	
Hardwarová příručka Dodatek > Technické údaje > Hlavní jednotka Bezpečnostní informace Zákony a vyhlášky > Laserová bezpečnost	Produkt vyhovuje následujícím bezpečnostním standardům. Toto zařízení vyhovuje požadavkům IEC60825-1:2007 (EN60825-1:2007) pro třídu 1 laserových produktů.	
Softwarová příručka  Příprava pro tisk > Nastavení možností pro tiskárnu > Je-li obousměrná komunikace vypnuta	Není-li zvoleno [Povolit obousměrnou komunikaci], Smart Organizing Monitor nelze použít. Pro použití software zvolte [Povolit obousměrnou komunikaci].	
Softwarová příručka Ostatní tiskové operace > Pokud vzniknou problémy se zadaným formátem a typem papíru	Dojde-li k chybě tisku, nelze nastavení pomocí Smart Organizing Monitor změnit.	
Softwarová příručka  Monitorování a konfigurace tiskárny > Používání nástroje Web Image Monitor > Kontrola informací o systému > Kontrola údajů počítadla	Zobrazuje celkový počet listů vytištěných na obou stranách.	

23

Softwarová příručka	Nezadávejte "49999" navíc k "53550" pro [Č. portu] pod položkou
Monitorování a konfigurace tiskárny >	[Nastavení tisku v síti].
Používání nástroje Web Image Monitor >	•
Konfigurace nastavení sítě > Konfigurace	
nastavení síťové aplikace	
Softwarová příručka	Pro [Prodleva DNS [sekundy]] lze zadat číslo mezi 1 a 999.
Monitorování a konfigurace tiskárny >	
Používání nástroje Web Image Monitor >	
Konfigurace nastavení sítě > Konfigurace	
nastavení serveru DNS	
Softwarová příručka	Tisknete-li pomocí připojení USB, nemusí být informace o tiskárně
Monitorování a konfigurace tiskárny > Nástroj Smart	v aplikaci Smart Organizing Monitor aktualizována správně.
Organizing Monitor > Zobrazení stavu tiskárny	
Softwarová příručka	Správná syntaxe pro příkaz "lpr" je následující.
Speciální úkony v systému Windows > Přímý	c:> lpr -S IP adresa tiskárny -P název tiskárny [-o l] \cesta\název souboru
tisk souborů přímo ze systému Windows >	c:> lpr -S název hosta tiskárny -P název tiskárny [-o 1] \cesta\název souboru
Příkazy pro tisk > lpr	
Softwarová příručka	Správná syntaxe pro příkaz "ftp" je následující.
Speciální úkony v systému Windows > Přímý	ftp>put \cesta\název souboru [volba]
tisk souborů přímo ze systému Windows >	ftp>mput \cesta\název souboru [\cesta\název souboru]
Příkazy pro tisk > ftp	
Softwarová příručka	"User" a "Password" pro přenos dat pomocí ftp jsou nastaveny na
Speciální úkony v systému Windows > Přímý	"sysadm". Pro přenos dat pomocí ftp zadejte "sysadm".
tisk souborů přímo ze systému Windows >	
Příkazy pro tisk > ftp	

Téma	Chyba	Oprava
Hardwarová příručka	5.Odstraňte ochranný materiál	5.Odstraňte ochranný materiál
Instalace tiskárny a doplňků > Instalace	připevněný uvnitř tiskárny.	připevněný uvnitř tiskárny.
tiskárny > Vybalení	Table	- Ban
Rychlý průvodce instalací 2. Vybalení	BOOM	DE SERVICIO

Následující popisy se nedají použít pro toto zařízení.

Nasieutjiei popisy se neuaji pouzit pro toto zarizem.		
Téma	Chyba	
Hardwarová příručka	<b>∰</b> Důležitě	
Připojení tiskárny > Zapojení do sítě	Total Duliezate	
	Používejte stíněný kabel Ethernet. Nestíněné kabely mohou	
	způsobit elektromagnetické rušení, které může být příčinou poruch.	
Hardwarová příručka	Nepoužívejte samolepící obálky. Tyto obálky mohou způsobit	
Papír a další média > Doporučení pro práci s papírem	poruchu tiskárny.	
> Druhy papíru a jiných médií > Typy papíru		
Hardwarová příručka		
Papír a další média > Vkládání papíru > Vkládání		
papíru do bočního zásobníku > Vkládání obálek		
Hardwarová příručka	Vložte papír zvoleného formátu do zásobníku a změňte nastavení	
Odstraňování problémů > Chybová & stavová	formátu papíru pomocí Smart Organizing Monitor.	
hlášení v programu Smart Organizing Monitor		
Softwarová příručka	<b>𝒯</b> Upozornění	
Ostatní tiskové operace > Kompletování		
The state of the s	Pokud je u první sady nastaveno automatické pokračování,	
	kompletování bude zrušeno.	
	Pokud se u první sady vyskytujte posun listu, kompletování bude	
	zrušeno.	
	Odkaz	
	Podrobnosti o způsobech tisku naleznete v nápovědě k ovladači tiskárny.	

24

Design Size : A5 Paper Size : B5 Save Date : 20

# Megjegyzés felhasználóknak

Ez a dokumentum a termék használatával kapcsolatos további információkat és a kezelési kézikönyvek leírásainak hibajavításait tartalmazza.

Témakör	Helyesbítés	
Hardver útmutató	A következő művelet szükséges a Hardver útmutatóban az 1. lépés	
A nyomtató csatlakoztatása > Hálózati kapcsolat Szoftver telepítési útmutató a hálózati	után, és a Szoftver telepítési útmutató a hálózati csatlakozáshoz című kézikönyvben az 1. lépés előtt. Miután végrehajtotta a műveletet, folytassa az adott útmutató következő lépésével.	
csatlakozáshoz	EU tagországok felhasználói	
1.Tesztoldal nyomtatása	FIGYELEM:  Megfelelően árnyékolt és földelt kábeleket és csatlakozókat kell használni a gazdaszámítógéphez (és/vagy a perifériákhoz) való csatlakoztatáshoz a kibocsátási határértékek betartása érdekében.	
	Felhasználók az USA-ban	
	FIGYELEM:  Megfelelően árnyékolt és földelt kábeleket és csatlakozókat  kell használni a gazdaszámítógéphez (és/vagy a perifériákhoz) való  csatlakoztatáshoz az FCC kibocsátási határértékek betartása  érdekében.	
	Összes felhasználó A) Az ethernet kábelhez való ferritmag e készülék tartozéka. Képezzen hurkot az ethernet kábel másik végén, kb. 5 cm-re (①) a készüléktől. Rögzítse a ferritmagot. B) Csatlakoztassa az ethernet kábelt a nyomtató hátoldalán található ethernet porthoz. A kábelt a ferritmag felöli végével csatlakoztassa a nyomtatóhoz. C) A kábel másik végét csatlakoztassa a hálózathoz, például egy hub segítségével.	
<b>Hardver útmutató</b> Papír és egyéb hordozók > Papírral kapcsolatos javaslatok > Papír betöltése	A papír betöltésekor mindig végezze el a papíradagoló papírtípus és -méret beállítását a Smart Organizing Monitor vagy a Web Image Monitor segítségével. Ha a nyomtató és a nyomtatóillesztő beállításai nem egyeznek, lehetséges, hogy a nyomtatási eredmény nem lesz megfelelő.	
Hardver útmutató Papír és egyéb hordozók > Papír betöltése > Papír betöltése a kézi adagolóba > Boríték betöltése	Az eredetileg nyitott fülekkel rendelkező borítékokat nyitott füllel, a zárt fülekkel rendelkező borítékokat pedig zárt füllel helyezze a nyomtatóba. A behelyezés előtt gondoskodjon róla, hogy a borítékok a lehető leglaposabb állapotban legyenek.	
<b>Hardver útmutató</b> Függelék > Adatok > Alapgép <b>Biztonsági tudnivalók</b> Törvények és rendelkezések > Lézerbiztonság	Ez a termék megfelel a következő biztonsági szabványnak. Ez a készülék megfelel az 1. osztályba sorolt lézerkészülékek IEC60825-1:2007 (EN60825-1:2007) követelményeinek.	
Szoftver útmutató Felkészülés a nyomtatásra > Opcionális beállítások létrehozása a nyomtatóhoz > Ha a kétirányú kommunikáció le van tiltva Szoftver útmutató	Ha a [Kétirányú támogatás engedélyezése] nincs kiválasztva, a Smart Organizing Monitor nem használható. Válassza ki a [Kétirányú támogatás engedélyezése] opciót a szoftver használatához.  Ha nyomtatási hiba történik, a beállítások nem változtathatók meg a	
Egyéb nyomtatási műveletek > Ha hibák jelentkeznek a megadott papírméretnél és típusnál	Smart Organizing Monitor használatával.	
Szoftver útmutató A nyomtató monitorozása és konfigurálása > Web Image Monitor használata > Rendszer adatai > A számlálóinformáció ellenőrzése	Megmutatja a kétoldalasan nyomtatott lapok összes számát.	

25

Szoftver útmutató	A "53550" mellett ne adja meg a "49999"-et a [Hálózati nyomtatási
A nyomtató monitorozása és konfigurálása >	beállítások] [Port sz.] opciójánál.
Web Image Monitor használata > Hálózati	
Beállítások értékeinek konfigurálása > Hálózati	
alkalmazások konfigurálása	
Szoftver útmutató	A [DNS időtúllépés [másodperc]] számára megadható szám 1-999
A nyomtató monitorozása és konfigurálása >	között lehet.
Web Image Monitor használata > Hálózati	
Beállítások értékeinek konfigurálása > A DNS	
beállítások konfigurálása	
Szoftver útmutató	Ha USB kapcsolaton keresztül nyomtat, a nyomtató információja a
A nyomtató monitorozása és konfigurálása > A	Smart Organizing Monitor programban nem mindig naprakész.
Smart Organizing Monitor használata > A	
nyomtató státusz megjelenítése	
Szoftver útmutató	Az "lpr" parancsot a következőképpen adja meg:
Speciális műveletek Windows alatt > Fájlok	c:> lpr -S nyomtató IP címe -P nyomtatónév [-o l] \útvonal\fájlnév
nyomtatása közvetlenül Windowsból >	c:> lpr -S nyomtató gazdagép címe -P nyomtatónév [-o 1] \v
Nyomtatási parancsok > lpr	
Szoftver útmutató	Az "ftp" parancsot a következőképpen adja meg:
Speciális műveletek Windows alatt > Fájlok	ftp>put \útvonal\fájlnév [opció]
nyomtatása közvetlenül Windowsból >	ftp>mput \útvonal\fájlnév [\útvonal\fájlnév]
Nyomtatási parancsok > ftp	
Szoftver útmutató	Az ftp szerveren történő adatátvitelhez szükséges "User" és a
Speciális műveletek Windows alatt > Fájlok	"Password" rögzített beállítása: "sysadm". Az ftp szerveren történő
nyomtatása közvetlenül Windowsból >	adatátvitelhez írja be a "sysadm" szót.
Nyomtatási parancsok > ftp	

Témakör	Hiba	Helyesbítés
Hardver útmutató	5. Távolítsa el a nyomtató belsejére	5. Távolítsa el a nyomtató belsejére
A nyomtató és a kiegészítők telepítése > A	erősített védőanyagokat.	erősített védőanyagokat.
nyomtató telepítése > Kicsomagolás		Table
Gyors telepítési útmutató 2.Kicsomagolás	Scotler.	NATION AND ADDRESS OF THE PARTY

A következő leírások nem alkalmazhatók ehhez a készülékez.

Témakör	Hiba
Hardver útmutató A nyomtató csatlakoztatása > Hálózati	Fontos
kapcsolat	Árnyékolt Ethernet kábelt használjon. A nem árnyékolt kábelek használata elektromágneses interferenciát idéz elő, amely meghibásodást okozhat.
Hardver útmutató	Kerülje az öntapadó borítékok használatát. Ezek a nyomtató
Papír és egyéb hordozók > Papírral	meghibásodásához vezethetnek.
kapcsolatos javaslatok > Papírtípusok és más	
hordozók > Papírtípusok	
Hardver útmutató	
Papír és egyéb hordozók > Papír betöltése > Papír	
betöltése a kézi adagolóba > Boríték betöltése	
Hardver útmutató	Töltse be a kiválasztott méretű papírt az adagolóba, majd a Smart
Hibaelhárítás > Hiba- és állapotüzenetek a	Organizing Monitor segítségével változtassa meg a papírméret
Smart Organizing Monitoron	beállítását.
Szoftver útmutató	<b>Ø</b> Megjegyzés
Egyéb nyomtatási műveletek > Szétválogatás	Ha az első példánynál Automatikus folytatás történik, a szétválogatás törlődik.
	Ha az első példánynál lapdobás történik, a szétválogatás törlődik.
	Referencia
	A nyomtatási módszerek részleteit lásd a nyomtatóvezérlő Súgójában.

26

# Uwagi dla użytkowników

Te uwagi to dodatkowe informacje na temat używania produktu i errata dla opisu w podręcznikach użytkownika.

Temat	Poprawnie
Podręcznik sprzętu	Następująca procedura jest wymagana po kroku 1 w Podręczniku
Podłączanie drukarki > Połączenie sieciowe	sprzętu i przed krokiem I w Podręczniku instalacji
	oprogramowania dla połączenia sieciowego.
Podręcznik instalacji oprogramowania dla	Po przeprowadzeniu tej procedury przejdź do następnego kroku w
połączenia sieciowego	każdym z tych podręczników.
1.Wydruk strony testowej	Użytkownicy w Unii Europejskiej
	I A
	✓ OSTRZEŻENIE:
	Odpowiednio osłonięte i uziemione kable i łącza muszą być
	używane do połączeń z hostem komputera (i/lub urządzenie
	peryferyjne) w celu spełnienia limitów emisji.
	Użytkownicy w Stanach Zjednoczonych
	⚠OSTRZEŻENIE:
	Odpowiednio osłonięte i uziemione kable i łącza muszą być używane
	do połączeń z hostem komputera (i/lub urządzenie peryferyjne) w
	celu spełnienia limitów emisji FCC.
	Wszyscy użytkownicy
	A) Rdzeń ferrytowy dla kabla
	Ethernet został dołączony do tego urządzenia. Zrób pętlę z
	kabla około 5 cm (2 cale) (1)
	od końca kabla od strony urządzenia. Dołącz rdzeń
	ferrytowy.
	B) Połącz kabel Ethernet do
	portu Ethernet, który jest
	umieszczony z tyłu drukarki.
	Połącz koniec kabla z rdzeniem ferrytowym do drukarki.
	C) Połącz drugi koniec kabla do sieci np.używając rozgałęziacza.
Podręcznik sprzętu	Gdy załadowałeś papier do kasety na papier zawsze ustawiaj typ i
Papier i pozostałe materiały > Zalecenia	rozmiar papieru dla kasety używając Smart Organizing Monitor lub
dotyczące papieru > Ładowanie papieru	Web Image Monitor. Jeśli ustawienia drukarki i sterownika drukarki
dotyczące papieru z zado mane papieru	nie będą do siebie pasować, wydruki mogą być nie takie jakich
	oczekujemy.
Podręcznik sprzętu	Koperty, których skrzydełka są otwarte muszą być drukowane ze
Papier i pozostałe materiały > Ładowanie	skrzydełkami otwartymi, a koperty, których skrzydełka są
papieru > Ładowanie papieru do tacy ręcznej.	zamknięte muszą być drukowane ze skrzydełkami zamkniętymi.
> Ładowanie kopert	Przed załadowaniem kopert upewnij się, że są tak płaskie jak to możliwe.
Podręcznik sprzętu	Produkt ten jest zgodny z następującymi standardami bezpieczeństwa.
Dodatek > Specyfikacje > Urządzenie główne	To urządzenie jest zgodne z wymogami IEC60825-1:2007 (EN60825-
Zasady bezpieczeństwa	1:2007) dla klasy 1 produktu laserowego.
Przepisy i regulacje prawne > Zasady	
bezpieczeństwa dotyczące lasera	
Podręcznik oprogramowania	Gdy nie wybrano [Włącz obsługę dwukierunkowa], Smart
Przygotowanie do drukowania > Określanie	Organizing Monitor nie może być użyty. Wybierz opcję [Włącz
ustawień opcji dla drukarki > Jeśli	obsługę dwukierunkowa] aby użyć oprogramowania.
komunikacja dwukierunkowa jest wyłączona	
Podręcznik oprogramowania	Gdy wystąpi błąd podczas drukowania, ustawienia nie mogą być
Inne funkcje drukowania > W razie wystąpienia	zmienione za pomocą Smart Organizing Monitor.
błędów przy określonym rozmiarze i typie papieru	
Podręcznik oprogramowania	Pokazuje ogólną liczbę arkuszy wydrukowanych po obu stronach.
Monitorowanie i konfigurowanie drukarki >	
Korzystanie z Web Image Monitor >	
Sprawdzanie Informacji o systemie >	
Sprawdzanie Informacji o liczniku	

27

Podręcznik oprogramowania	Nie określaj "49999" w edycji do "53550" dla [Nr portu] w opcji
Monitorowanie i konfigurowanie drukarki > Korzystanie	[Sieciowe ustawienia drukowania].
z Web Image Monitor > Konfiguracja ustawień	
sieciowych > Konfiguracja ustawień aplikacji sieciowej	
Podręcznik oprogramowania	Liczba pomiędzy 1 a 999 może być określona dla opcji [Oczekiw.
Monitorowanie i konfigurowanie drukarki >	na DNS [w sek.]].
Korzystanie z Web Image Monitor > Konfiguracja	
ustawień sieciowych > Konfiguracja ustawień DNS	
Podręcznik oprogramowania	Gdy drukujesz przez połączenie USB, informacja o drukarce w
Monitorowanie i konfigurowanie drukarki >	opcji Smart Organizing Monitor może nie zostać zaktualizowana
Używanie programu Smart Organizing Monitor	poprawnie.
> Wyświetlanie stanu drukarki	
Podręcznik oprogramowania	Poprawna składnia dla polecenia "Ipr" jest następująca.
Podręcznik oprogramowania Szczególne operacje w systemie Windows >	Poprawna składnia dla polecenia "Ipr" jest następująca. c:> lpr -S adres IP drukarki -P nazwa drukarki [-o l] \ścieżka\nazwa pliku
Szczególne operacje w systemie Windows >	c:> lpr -S adres IP drukarki -P nazwa drukarki [-o l] \ścieżka\nazwa pliku
Szczególne operacje w systemie Windows > Drukowanie plików bezpośrednio z systemu	c:> lpr -S adres IP drukarki -P nazwa drukarki [-o 1] \sciezka\nazwa pliku c:> lpr -S nazwa hosta drukarki -P nazwa drukarki [-o 1] \sciezka\nazwa
Szczególne operacje w systemie Windows > Drukowanie plików bezpośrednio z systemu Windows > Polecenia drukowania > lpr	c:> lpr -S adres IP drukarki -P nazwa drukarki [-o 1] \ścieżka\nazwa pliku c:> lpr -S nazwa hosta drukarki -P nazwa drukarki [-o 1] \ścieżka\nazwa pliku
Szczególne operacje w systemie Windows > Drukowanie plików bezpośrednio z systemu Windows > Polecenia drukowania > lpr Podręcznik oprogramowania	c:> lpr -S adres IP drukarki -P nazwa drukarki [-o 1] \sciezka\nazwa pliku c:> lpr -S nazwa hosta drukarki -P nazwa drukarki [-o 1] \sciezka\nazwa pliku Poprawna składnia dla polecenia "Ipr" jest następująca.
Szczególne operacje w systemie Windows > Drukowanie plików bezpośrednio z systemu Windows > Polecenia drukowania > lpr  Podręcznik oprogramowania Szczególne operacje w systemie Windows >	c:> lpr -S adres IP drukarki -P nazwa drukarki [-o 1] \ścieżka\nazwa pliku c:> lpr -S nazwa hosta drukarki -P nazwa drukarki [-o 1] \ścieżka\nazwa pliku Poprawna składnia dla polecenia "Ipr" jest następująca. ftp>put \ścieżka\nazwa pliku [opcja]
Szczególne operacje w systemie Windows > Drukowanie plików bezpośrednio z systemu Windows > Polecenia drukowania > lpr  Podręcznik oprogramowania Szczególne operacje w systemie Windows > Drukowanie plików bezpośrednio z systemu	c:> lpr -S adres IP drukarki -P nazwa drukarki [-o 1] \ścieżka\nazwa pliku c:> lpr -S nazwa hosta drukarki -P nazwa drukarki [-o 1] \ścieżka\nazwa pliku Poprawna składnia dla polecenia "Ipr" jest następująca. ftp>put \ścieżka\nazwa pliku [opcja]
Szczególne operacje w systemie Windows > Drukowanie plików bezpośrednio z systemu Windows > Polecenia drukowania > lpr  Podręcznik oprogramowania Szczególne operacje w systemie Windows > Drukowanie plików bezpośrednio z systemu Windows > Polecenia drukowania > ftp	c:> lpr -S adres IP drukarki -P nazwa drukarki [-o 1] \ścieżka\nazwa pliku c:> lpr -S nazwa hosta drukarki -P nazwa drukarki [-o 1] \ścieżka\nazwa pliku Poprawna składnia dla polecenia "Ipr" jest następująca. ftp>put \ścieżka\nazwa pliku [opcja] ftp>mput \ścieżka\nazwa pliku [\ścieżka\nazwa pliku]
Szczególne operacje w systemie Windows > Drukowanie plików bezpośrednio z systemu Windows > Polecenia drukowania > lpr  Podręcznik oprogramowania Szczególne operacje w systemie Windows > Drukowanie plików bezpośrednio z systemu Windows > Polecenia drukowania > ftp  Podręcznik oprogramowania	c:> lpr -S adres IP drukarki -P nazwa drukarki [-o 1] \scieżka\nazwa pliku c:> lpr -S nazwa hosta drukarki -P nazwa drukarki [-o 1] \scieżka\nazwa pliku Poprawna składnia dla polecenia "Ipr" jest następująca. ftp>put \scieżka\nazwa pliku [opcja] ftp>mput \scieżka\nazwa pliku [\scieżka\nazwa pliku]  "User" i "Password" dla nadawanych danych przez ftp są ustalone

Temat	Błąd	Poprawnie
Podręcznik sprzętu	5.Zdejmij materiał zabezpieczający	5.Zdejmij materiał zabezpieczający
Instalacja drukarki i opcji > Instalacja drukarki	umieszczony wewnątrz drukarki.	umieszczony wewnątrz drukarki.
> Rozpakowanie		
Podręcznik szybkiej instalacji 2.Rozpakowanie	No.	

Następujące opisy nie dotyczą tego urządzenia.		
Temat	Błąd	
Podręcznik sprzętu Podłączanie drukarki > Połączenie sieciowe	₩Ważne	
	Należy korzystać z ekranowanego kabla Ethernet. Nieekranowane kable tworzą elektromagnetyczne zakłócenia, które mogłyby spowodować nieprawidłowe działanie urządzenia.	
Podręcznik sprzętu	Nie należy używać kopert samoprzylepnych. Mogą one	
Papier i pozostałe materiały > Zalecenia dotyczące papieru > Typy papieru i inne nośniki > Typy papieru	spowodować niewłaściwe działanie drukarki.	
Podręcznik sprzętu		
Papier i pozostałe materiały > Ładowanie papieru >		
Ładowanie papieru do tacy ręcznej. > Ładowanie kopert		
Podręcznik sprzętu	Załaduj do kasety papier w wybranym rozmiarze, a następnie zmień	
Rozwiązywanie problemów > Komunikaty błędu	rozmiar papieru za pomocą Smart Organizing Monitor.	
i stanu w programie Smart Organizing Monitor		
Podręcznik oprogramowania	<b>𝒯</b> Uwaga	
Inne funkcje drukowania > Sortowanie	Jeśli dla pierwszego zestawu zostanie zastosowana funkcja	
	automatycznej kontynuacji, sortowanie zostanie anulowane.	
	Jeśli dla pierwszego zestawu zostanie zastosowana funkcja wysuwu	
	stron, sortowanie zostanie anulowane.	
	Zajrzeć do instrukcji	
	Szczegółowe informacje dotyczące metody drukowania zawiera Pomoc do sterownika drukarki.	

28

# Примечания для пользователей

Эти примечания предоставляют дополнительную информацию по эксплуатации данного продукта, а также список опечаток, допущенных при описании аппарата в руководствах пользователя.

Towa	Исправно
Тема Руководство по аппаратному обеспечению	Исправлено Выполните следующие действия после шага 1 руководства по
Соединение принтера > Сетевое соединение	выполните спедующие оеиствия после шага 1 руковооства по аппаратному обеспечению и перед шагом 1 руководства по установке программного обеспечения для подключения. После этого переходите к дальнейшим действиям, описанным в руководствах.
Руководство по установке программного	Для пользователей в ЕС
обеспечения для подключения 1.Печать тестовой страницы	<b>҈ВНИМАНИЕ</b> :
1.Почать гестовой страницы	Для соответствия требованиям по предельно допустимым выбросам при соединении с хост компьютером (и/или с периферийным устройством) необходимо использовать соответствующие экранированные заземленные кабели и электрические соединители.
	Для пользователей в США
	<b>҈ВНИМАНИЕ</b> :
	Для соответствия требованиям Федеральной комиссии связи по предельно допустимым выбросам при соединении с хост компьютером (и/или с периферийным устройством) необходимо использовать соответствующие экранированные и заземленные кабели и электрические соединители.
	Для всех пользователей А) С данным аппаратом
	поставляется ферритовый сердечник для интерфейсного кабеля Ethernet. На расстоянии около 5 см (2 дюйма) сделайте на кабеле петлю (①) от конца кабеля со стороны аппарата.
	B) Подсоедините кабель Ethernet к порту Ethernet, расположенному на задней части принтера.
	Подсоедините конец кабеля с ферритовым сердечником к принтеру.  С) Подсоедините другой конец кабеля к сети, используя, например, концентратор.
Руководство по аппаратному обеспечению Бумага и другие носители > Рекомендации по использованию бумаги > Загрузка бумаги	При загрузке бумаги в лоток подачи, всегда указывайте тип и размер бумаги для используемого лотка, используя Smart Organizing Monitor или Web Image Monitor. В случае не совпадения настроек принтера с настройками драйвера печати,
Руководство по аппаратному обеспечению Бумага и другие носители > Загрузка бумаги > Загрузка бумаги в обходной лоток > Загрузка конвертов	результаты печати могут не соответствовать вашим ожиданиям. При печати на конвертах, загружайте их в том положении, в каком они упакованы: с открытыми клапанами или с закрытыми. Перед загрузкой конвертов убедитесь, что они максимально разглажены.
Руководство по аппаратному обеспечению Приложение > Параметры > Основной модуль Техника безопасности Ограничения, установленные законами > Лазерная безопасность	Данный продукт соответствует следующим стандартам безопасности. Этот аппарат соответствует требованиям международного стандарта IEC60825-1:2007 (EN60825-1:2007) для лазерного оборудования класса 1.
Руководство по программному обеспечению Подготовка к печати > Выполнение настроек параметров для принтера > Если двусторонняя связь отключена	Если не выбран параметр [Разрешить двусторонний обмен данными], то использовать Smart Organizing Monitor невозможно. Для использования данного ПО выберите [Разрешить двусторонний обмен данными].
Руководство по программному обеспечению Прочие операции печати>При ошибке размера и типа бумаги	При появлении ошибки печати невозможно поменять настройки с помощью Smart Organizing Monitor.
Руководство по программному обеспечению Мониторинг и конфигурирование принтера > Использование программы Web Image Monitor > Проверка информации о	Показывает общее количество листов, печать на которых произведена с двух сторон.
системе>Проверка информации счетчиков	29

Руководство по программному обеспечению	Не указывайте для параметра [Номер порта] в меню
Мониторинг и конфигурирование принтера >	[Настройка печати по сети] значение "49999" вместе со
Использование программы Web Image	значением "53550".
Monitor > Настройка параметров сети >	
Настройка параметров сетевого приложения	
Руководство по программному обеспечению	Для параметра [Время ожидания DNS [сек]] можно задать
Мониторинг и конфигурирование принтера >	число от 1 до 999.
Использование программы Web Image	
Monitor > Настройка параметров сети >	
Настройка параметров DNS	
Руководство по программному обеспечению	При печати через USB-соединение информация о принтере по
Мониторинг и конфигурирование принтера >	Smart Organizing Monitor может обновляться некорректно.
Использование Smart Organizing Monitor >	
Отображение состояния принтера	
Руководство по программному обеспечению	Следующий синтаксис "lpr" команды является правильным.
Специальные операции в Windows > Печать	c:> lpr -S IP-адрес принтера -Р имя принтера [-о 1] \путь\имя файла
файлов прямо из Windows > Команды печати > lpr	c:> lpr -S имя узла принтера -Р имя принтера [-о l] \путь\имя файла
Руководство по программному обеспечению	Следующий синтаксис "lpr" команды является правильным.
Специальные операции в Windows > Печать	ftp>put \путь\имя файла [Параметр]
файлов прямо из Windows > Команды печати > ftp	ftp>mput \путь\имя файла [\путь\имя файла]
Руководство по программному обеспечению	При передачи данных по ftp оба параметра "User" (пользователь)
Специальные операции в Windows > Печать	и "Password" (пароль) прикреплены к параметру "sysadmin". Для
файлов прямо из Windows > Команды печати > ftp	передачи данных по ftp введите параметр "sysadmin".

Тема	Ошибка	Исправлено
Руководство по аппаратному обеспечению	5.Выньте упаковочный материал	5.Выньте упаковочный материал
Установка принтера и дополнительного	прикрепленный внутри принтера.	прикрепленный внутри принтера.
оборудования > Установка принтера > Распаковка  Краткое руководство по установке 2.Распаковка	DECEMBER OF THE PROPERTY OF TH	SATURE SATURE

Следующее не относится к данному аппарату.

Тема	Ошибка
Руководство по аппаратному обеспечению Соединение принтера > Сетевое соединение	<b>‡</b> Важно
объемнение принтера у обтовое соодинение	Используйте экранированный кабель Ethernet.
	Неэкранированные кабели создают электромагнитные помехи, которые могут привести к сбоям в работе.
Руководство по аппаратному обеспечению	Не используйте самоклеящиеся конверты. Это может привести
Бумага и другие носители > Рекомендации	к сбоям в работе принтера.
по использованию бумаги > Виды бумаги и	
других носителей > Типы бумаги	
Руководство по аппаратному обеспечению	
Бумага и другие носители > Загрузка бумаги > Загрузка	
бумаги в обходной лоток > Загрузка конвертов	
Руководство по аппаратному обеспечению	Загрузите бумагу выбранного формата в лоток и измените
Устранение неполадок > Сообщения об ошибках	формат бумаги с помощью Smart Organizing Monitor.
и состоянии в Smart Organizing Monitor	
Руководство по программному обеспечению	<b>Э</b> Примечание
Прочие операции печати > Сортировать	При задействовании функции автопродолжения во время
	печати первого комплекта сортировка будет отменена.
	При задействовании функции подачи страницы во время печати
	первого комплекта сортировка будет отменена.
	<b>Р</b> Ссылки
	Подробнее о способах печати см. в Справке драйвера принтера.

30

# Notas para os usuários

Estas notas fornecem informações adicionais sobre o uso do produto e errata para a descrição nos manuais de operação.

Tópico	Correção
Guia de Hardware	O seguinte procedimento é necessário após a Etapa 1 no Guia de
Conectar a Impressora > Conexão de Rede	Hardware e antes da Etapa 1 no Guia de Instalação de Software para Conexão de Rede.
Guia de Instalação de Software para Conexão de Rede	Depois desse procedimento, avance para a etapa seguinte em cada manual.
1.Imprimir uma Página de Teste	Usuários na União Européia
	CUIDADO:
	Deve-se usar cabos devidamente revestidos e aterrados para conexão ao host (e/ou periféricos), para cumprir os limites de emissões.
	Usuários nos Estados Unidos da América
	Deve-se usar cabos devidamente revestidos e aterrados para conexão ao host (e/ou periféricos), para cumprir os limites de emissões da FCC.
	Todos os usuários
	A) É fornecido com este
	equipamento um núcleo de
	ferrite para o cabo de interface
	Ethernet. Faça um loop no
	cabo a cerca de 5 cm (2 polegadas) ((1)) da extremidade
	do lado do equipamento.
	Conecte o núcleo de ferrite.
	B) Conecte o cabo Ethernet à
	porta Ethernet localizada na parte traseira da impressora.
	Conecte a extremidade do cabo com o núcleo de ferrite à impressora.
	C) Ligue a outra extremidade do cabo à rede, por exemplo, usando um hub.
Guia de Hardware	Quando tiver colocado papel numa bandeja, configure sempre o tipo e
Papel e outros suportes > Recomendações de	o tamanho do papel para a bandeja com o Smart Organizing Monitor
Papel > Colocar papel	ou o Web Image Monitor. Se as configurações na impressora e no
	driver de impressão não corresponderem, os resultados de impressão
Guia de Hardware	podem não sair como esperado.  Envelopes com abas abertas devem ser impressos com as abas
Papel e outros suportes > Colocar papel >	abertas e envelopes com abas fechadas devem ser impressos com as
Colocar papel na bandeja de alimentação	abas fechadas.
manual > Colocar envelopes	Antes de colocar envelopes, confirme se estão bem planos.
Guia de Hardware	Este produto cumpre com as seguintes normas de segurança.
Anexo > Especificações > Unidade principal	Este equipamento atende aos requisitos da norma IEC60825-1:2007
	(EN60825-1:2007) para produtos a laser de classe 1.
Guia de Software	Não é possível usar o Smart Organizing Monitor quando [Ativar
Preparar para impressão > Fazer definições	suporte bidirecional] não está selecionado. Selecione [Ativar
das opções para a impressora > Se a	suporte bidirecional] para utilizar o software.
comunicação bidirecional for desativada  Guia de Software	Quando ocorre um erro de impressão, não é possível alterar as
Outras operações de impressão > Se ocorrerem	configurações com o Smart Organizing Monitor.
erros com o formato e o tipo do papel especificado	Configurações com o Smart Organizing Monitor.
Guia de Software	Mostra o número total de folhas impressas em ambos os lados.
Monitorar e configurar a impressora > Usar o	1
Web Image Monitor > Verificar a informação de	
sistema > Verificar a informação do contador	
Guia de Software	Não especifique "49999" juntamente com "53550" para [Porta No.]
Monitorar e configurar a impressora > Usar o	em [Definições de Impressão da Rede].
Web Image Monitor > Configurar as definições	
de rede > Configurar as definições de aplicação	
de rede	

31

Guia de Software	É possível especificar um número entre 1 e 999 para [Limite de
Monitorar e configurar a impressora > Usar o	tempo do DNS [segundos]].
Web Image Monitor > Configurar as definições	
de rede > Configurar as definições DNS	
Guia de Software	Ao imprimir via conexão USB, as informações da impressora no
Monitorar e configurar a impressora > Usando o Smart	Smart Organizing Monitor podem não ser atualizadas corretamente.
Organizing Monitor > Ver o estado da impressora	
Guia de Software	A sintaxe correta para o comando "lpr" é a seguinte.
Operações especiais no Windows > Imprimir	c:> lpr -S endereço IP da impressora -P nome da impressora [-o 1]
arquivos diretamente a partir do Windows >	\caminho\nome do arquivo
Comandos de impressão > lpr	c:> lpr -S nome do host da impressora -P nome da impressora [-o l]
	\caminho\nome do arquivo
Guia de Software	A sintaxe correta para o comando "ftp" é a seguinte.
Operações especiais no Windows > Imprimir	ftp>put \caminho\nome do arquivo [opção]
arquivos diretamente a partir do Windows >	ftp>mput \caminho\nome do arquivo [\caminho\nome do arquivo]
Comandos de impressão > ftp	
Guia de Software	"User" e "Password" para a transferência de dados por ftp foram
Operações especiais no Windows > Imprimir	fixados como "sysadm". Para transferir dados por ftp, digite
arquivos diretamente a partir do Windows >	"sysadm".
Comandos de impressão > ftp	

#### 

As seguintes descrições não se aplicam a este equipamento.

Tópico	Erro
Guia de Hardware	<b>∰</b> Importante
Conectar a Impressora > Conexão de Rede	Utilize cabos Ethernet blindados. Os cabos não blindados criam
	interferência eletromagnética que pode causar avarias.
Guia de Hardware	Evite utilizar envelopes autocolantes. Isto pode provocar disfunções
Papel e outros suportes > Recomendações de Papel > Tipos	na impressora.
de Papel e de Outros Suportes de Impressão > Tipos de papel	
Guia de Hardware	
Papel e outros suportes > Colocar papel > Colocar papel	
na bandeja de alimentação manual > Colocar envelopes	
Guia de Hardware	Coloque papel na bandeja de papel do formato selecionado e altere a
Resolução de Problemas > Mensagens de Erro	definição do formato de papel com o Smart Organizing Monitor.
& Estado no Smart Organizing Monitor	
Guia de Software	<b>∅</b> Nota
Outras operações de impressão > Agrupar	Se a opção Continuar Automaticamente ocorrer no primeiro
	conjunto, a função Agrupar será cancelada.
	Se ocorrer um avanço de página no primeiro conjunto, a função
	Agrupar será cancelada.
	Referência
	Para mais informações sobre o método de impressão, consulte a
	Ajuda do driver de impressora.

EN B EN S DE E FR FR IT T DA B Copyright © 2009 ES S NL NL NO NO PT PT FI FI SV SE Printed in China CS Z HU HU PL PL RU RU PT BR M012-8681



32

Design Size : A5 Paper Size : B5

Save Date: 2009/11/16 10:29:00



## Note to Administrator

This manual is intended to provide administrators with additional information about the security functions of this printer. Read this manual as well as "Software Guide".

This manual and its contents should be kept by, and restricted to, administrators.

#### **Password**

When you log on to this printer, you will be prompted to enter the password or access code. We strongly recommend you to change the factory default password or access code immediately to prevent information leakage and unauthorized operations by others.

You will be prompted to enter your password or access code when you attempt to do any of the following:

- ☐ Change printer settings configured using Web Image Monitor.
- ☐ Change an administrator's printer settings using Smart Organizing Monitor.

To use the factory default password or access code, leave the password blank when using Web Image Monitor. When using Smart Organizing monitor, enter "Admin" as the access code.

To Change password for Web Image Monitor and Smart Organizing Monitor, you need to log on as an Administrator, and then make the necessary settings.

# F Reference

For details about setting a password, see Web Image Monitor or Smart Organizing Monitor Help.

## Remarque à l'attention de l'administrateur

Ce manuel a été conçu pour fournir aux administrateurs des informations complémentaires sur les fonctions de sécurité de cette imprimante. Lisez ce manuel ainsi que le "Manuel du logiciel". Ce manuel et son contenu sont exclusivement destinés aux administrateurs et doivent être conservés par ceux-ci.

#### Mot de passe

Quand vous vous connectez à cette imprimante, vous êtes invité à saisir votre mot de passe ou votre code d'accès. Nous vous recommandons vivement de modifier immédiatement le mot de passe ou le code d'accès par défaut afin d'empêcher toute fuite d' informations ou utilisation non autorisée par d'autres personnes.

Vous serez invité à saisir votre mot de passe ou votre code d'accès lorsque vous tenterez l'une des opérations suivantes :

- ☐ Modifier les paramètres de l'imprimante à l'aide de Web Image Monitor.
- ☐ Modifier les paramètres de l'imprimante d'un administrateur à l'aide de Smart Organizing Monitor.

Pour utiliser le mot de passe ou le code d'accès par défaut, laissez le champ de mot de passe vide lorsque vous utilisez Web Image Monitor. Lorsque vous utilisez Smart Organizing Monitor, saisissez "Admin" comme code d'accès.

Pour modifier le mot de passe pour Web Image Monitor et Smart Organizing Monitor, vous devez vous connecter en tant qu'Administrateur puis configurer les paramètres nécessaires.

# Référence

Pour plus d'informations sur la configuration d'un mot de passe, reportezvous à l'aide de Web Image Monitor ou Smart Organizing Monitor.

#### Administratorhinweise

Dieses Handbuch dient dazu, Administratoren zusätzliche Informationen zu den Sicherheitsfunktionen dieses Druckers zur Verfügung zu stellen. Lesen Sie dieses Handbuch sowie die "Software-Anleitung".

Dieses Handbuch und seine Inhalte sollten nur an Administratoren weitergegeben werden.

#### **Passwort**

Wenn Sie sich bei diesem Drucker anmelden, werden Sie dazu aufgefordert, das Passwort oder den Zugriffscode einzugeben. Wir empfehlen dringend, umgehend das werkseitig eingestellte Passwort oder den Zugriffscode zu ändern, um den Verlust von Informationen und den unberechtigten Betrieb durch Andere zu verhindern.

Sie werden dazu aufgefordert, Ihr Passwort oder Ihren Zugriffscode einzugeben, wenn Sie versuchen, einen der folgenden Vorgänge durchzuführen:

- □ Ändern der Druckereinstelllungen, die unter Verwendung von Web Image Monitor konfiguriert wurden.
- ☐ Ändern der Druckereinstellungen eines Administrators unter Verwendung von Smart Organizing Monitor.

Zum Verwenden des werkseitig eingestellten Passworts oder Zugriffscodes, lassen Sie das Passwort leer, wenn Sie den Web Image Monitor verwenden. Geben Sie bei Verwendung des Smart Organizing Monitor als Zugriffscode "Admin" ein.

Um das Passwort für den Web Image Monitor und den Smart Organizing Monitor zu ändern, müssen Sie sich als Administrator anmelden und dann die notwendigen Einstellungen vornehmen.

## **■** Referenz

Für weitere Informationen zum Erstellen eines Passworts siehe die Hilfefunktion des Web Image Monitor oder des Smart Organizing Monitor.

## Nota per l'amministratore

Il presente manuale ha l'obiettivo di fornire agli amministratori ulteriori informazioni sulle funzioni di sicurezza della stampante. Leggere sia questo manuale che la "Guida software". Il manuale e il suo contenuto sono rivolti all'utilizzo esclusivo degli amministratori

### **Password**

Quando si accede alla stampante viene richiesto di inserire la password o il codice di accesso. Si consiglia di cambiare immediatamente la password o il codice di accesso predefinito per evitare qualsiasi fuga di informazioni e utilizzo non autorizzato da parte di terzi.

Sarà necessario inserire la password o il codice di accesso per effettuare le sequenti operazioni:

- Modifica delle impostazioni della stampante configurate attraverso il Web Image Monitor.
- ☐ Modifica delle impostazioni della stampante configurate dall'amministratore attraverso lo Smart Organizing Monitor.

Per utilizzare la password o il codice di accesso predefinito, lasciare vuoto il campo della password quando si utilizza Web Image Monitor. Quando si utilizza lo Smart Organizing Monitor, inserire "Admin" come codice di accesso.

Per modificare la password del Web Image Monitor e dello Smart Organizing Monitor bisogna accedere come Amministratore e quindi configurare le impostazioni necessarie.

# Riferimento

Per ulteriori informazioni sull'impostazione della password, vedere la Guida del Web Image Monitor o dello Smart Organizing Monitor.

#### Nota para el administrador

Este manual se ha elaborado para proporcionar información adicional a los administradores sobre las funciones de seguridad de la impresora. Lea este manual y el "Manual de software". Este manual y su contenido están limitados a los administradores y sólo ellos pueden acceder a los mismos.

#### Contraseña

Cuando inicie sesión en la impresora, deberá introducir la contraseña o el código de acceso. Le recomendamos cambiar la contraseña o el código de acceso de fábrica inmediatamente a fin de evitar la fuga de información y las operaciones no autorizadas por parte de terceros.

Deberá introducir la contraseña o el código de acceso cada vez que intente realizar lo siguiente:

- □ Cambiar los ajustes de la impresora configurados a través de Web Image Monitor.
- □ Cambiar los ajustes de la impresora de un administrador a través de Smart Organizing Monitor.

Para utilizar la contraseña o el código de acceso de fábrica, deje el campo de la contraseña en blanco cuando utilice Web Image Monitor. Cuando utilice Smart Organizing Monitor, introduzca "Admin" como código de acceso.

Para cambiar la contraseña de Web Image Monitor y Smart Organizing Monitor, deberá iniciar sesión como Administrador y después realizar los ajustes necesarios.

## **■** Referencia

Para obtener detalles sobre la configuración de una contraseña, consulte la sección de Ayuda de Web Image Monitor o Smart Organizing Monitor.

## Nota para o Administrador

O presente manual destina-se a fornecer aos administradores informações adicionais sobre as funções de segurança desta impressora. Leia este manual, bem como o "Guia de Software". O presente manual e o respectivo conteúdo deve ser mantido à responsabilidade exclusiva dos administradores.

## Palavra-passe

Ao iniciar a sessão nesta impressora, ser-lhe-á solicitada a introdução da palavra-passe ou código de acesso. Recomendamos vivamente que altere imediatamente a palavra-passe ou o código de acesso predefinido de fábrica para evitar a fuga de informação e operações não autorizadas por outras pessoas.

Ser-lhe-á solicitada a introdução da sua palavra-passe ou código de acesso quando tentar fazer uma das seguintes operações:

- ☐ Alterar as definições da impressora através do Web Image Monitor.
- □ Alterar as definições da impressora do administrador através do Smart Organizing Monitor.

Para utilizar a palavra-passe ou código de acesso predefinido de fábrica, deixe o campo da palavra-passe em branco quando utilizar o Web Image Monitor. Ao utilizar o Smart Organizing Monitor, introduza "Admin" como código de acesso.

Para alterar a palavra-passe para o Web Image Monitor e o Smart Organizing Monitor, precisa de iniciar a sessão como Administrador, e, de seguida, efectuar as alterações necessárias.

## 

Para mais informações acerca da definição da palavra-passe, consulte a Ajuda do Web Image Monitor ou do Smart Organizing Monitor.

## Opmerking voor beheerder

Deze handleiding is bedoeld om beheerders extra informatie te geven over de beveiligingsfuncties van deze printer. Lees zowel deze handleiding als de "Softwarehandleiding".

Deze handleiding en zijn inhoud moeten uitsluitend door beheerders worden bewaard.

#### Wachtwoord

Wanneer u inlogt op deze printer, wordt u gevraagd om een wachtwoord of toegangscode in te voeren. We raden u ten zeerste aan het standaard wachtwoord of de toegangscode onmiddellijk te wijzigen, om te voorkomen dat er informatie uitlekt of dat derden onbevoegde handelingen kunnen uitvoeren.

U wordt altijd gevraagd uw wachtwoord of toegangscode in te voeren wanneer u één van de volgende handelingen probeert te verrichten:

- ☐ Printerinstellingen die geconfigureerd werden met Web Image Monitor wijzigen.
- ☐ Printerinstellingen van de beheerder wijzigen met Smart Organizing Monitor

Als u het standaard wachtwoord of de toegangscode wilt gebruiken wanneer u gebruik maakt van Web Image Monitor, dan moet u het wachtwoordveld blanco laten. Wanneer u Smart Organizing Monitor gebruikt, voert u "Admin" in als de toegangscode.

Om het wachtwoord voor Web Image Monitor en Smart Organizing Monitor te wijzigen, moet u aanloggen als beheerder en vervolgens de nodige instellingen aanbrengen.

# Verwijzing

Voor meer informatie over wachtwoorden instellen, raadpleeg Web Image Monitor of Smart Organizing Monitor Help.

## Nota ao Administrador

O presente manual destina-se a fornecer aos administradores informações adicionais sobre as funções de segurança desta impressora. Leia este manual, bem como o "Guia de Software". O presente manual e o respectivo conteúdo deve ser mantido à responsabilidade exclusiva dos administradores.

## Senha

Ao iniciar a sessão na impressora, você será solicitado a inserir sua senha ou seu código de acesso. Recomendamos enfaticamente que você altere a senha ou o código de acesso padrão de fábrica para evitar vazamento de informações e a realização de operações não autorizadas por terceiros.

Sua senha ou seu código de acesso será solicitado quando você tentar realizar qualquer uma das seguintes operações:

- ☐ Alterar as definições da impressora através do Web Image Monitor.
- ☐ Alterar as definições da impressora do administrador através do Smart Organizing Monitor.

Para usar a senha ou o código de acesso padrão de fábrica, deixe o campo Senha em branco ao utilizar o Web Image Monitor. Ao usar o Smart Organizing Monitor, digite "Admin" como código de acesso.

Para alterar a senha para o Web Image Monitor e o Smart Organizing Monitor, é preciso iniciar a sessão como Administrador, e, em seguida, fazer as alterações necessárias.

## ■ Referência

Para mais informações sobre a definição de uma senha, consulte a Ajuda do Web Image Monitor ou do Smart Organizing Monitor.

Print\_M0128617.indd 2 09/10/28 11:04:22